GEORGETOWN CLASSICS IN ARABIG LANGUAGE AND LINGUISTICS

## FORMAL SPOKEN ARABIC

## BASIC COURSE WITH MP3 FILES SECOND EDITION



KARIN C. RYDING AND DAVID J. MEHALL

# FORMAL SPOKEN ARABIC BASIC COURSE WITH MP3 FILES Second Edition 

Karin C. Ryding David J. Mehall

The first edition of this book was largely based on Spoken Eastern Arabic, written by the author while employed by the U.S. Department of State. After leaving, the author revised the book entirely, adding, among other things, the preface, appendices, and Notes to the Teacher. The book was re-edited, with substantial parts rewritten. The author claims no right to U.S. government work or material in the public domain.

The CD was remastered from the original audiotapes, which were engineered at the Foreign Service Language Laboratory.

Georgetown University Press, Washington, D.C.
© 2005 by Georgetown University Press. All rights reserved.
Printed in the United States of America
$\begin{array}{llllllllll}10 & 9 & 8 & 7 & 6 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 2 & 1\end{array}$ 2005

This book is printed on acid-free paper meeting the requirements of the American National Standard for Permanence in Paper for Printed Library Materials.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Ryding, Karin C.
Formal spoken Arabic basic course with MP3 files / Karin C. Ryding and David J. Mehall.-2nd ed.
p. cm.-(Georgetown classics in Arabic language and linguistics) ISBN 1-58901-060-4 (alk. paper)

1. Arabic language-Grammar. 2. Arabic language-Textbooks for foreign speakers-English. I. Mehall, David J. II. Title. III. Series. PJ6III.R933 2005
492.7'83421--dc22

Basim Abadir and Sana Samy

## Contents

Contents of the MP3 Files ..... xi
Arabic Research at Georgetown University ..... XV
Preface ..... xvii
Preface to the first edition ..... xxi
Acknowledgments to the second edition ..... xxiii
Introduction ..... xxv
Teacher's Notes ..... xxviii
Student's Notes ..... xxix
LESSON ONE: HEADS OF STATE ..... I
Equational sentences ..... 3
Use of g"and" ..... 3
Definite article ..... 4
LESSON TWO: CITIES AND COUNTRIES ..... 11
Equational sentences ..... 13
Gender ..... 14
The construct phrase ..... 14
LESSON THREE: OFFICIALTITLES ..... 21
فيه and ..... 24
Equational sentences ..... 24
The construct phrase ..... 25
Noun plurals ..... 26
LESSON FOUR: GEOGRAPHY ..... 35
Adjectives ..... 38
Nisba adjectives ..... 39
Place names ..... 40
Possessive pronouns "his" and "her" ..... 40
LESSON FIVE: SYSTEMS OF GOVERNMENT ..... 49
Nisba adjectives ..... 51
Noun and adjective plurals ..... 52
Word order ..... 53
Verbs كان and صار; citation forms ..... 53
Negation: Use of مِش ..... 54
LESSON SIX: REVIEW ..... 63
LESSON SEVEN: GEOGRAPHY II ..... 69
LESSON EIGHT: LOST LUGGAGE ..... 83
Demonstrative pronouns ..... 90
Possessive pronoun suffixes ..... 94
"To have" عِنْـ ..... 97
Past tense conjugation ..... 99
Predicate adjectives ..... 101
Colors ..... 104
Review drills ..... 110
LESSON NINE: GETTING ACQUAINTED ..... 113
Subject pronouns ..... 121
Object pronouns ..... 123
"To have (with)" ..... 128
Past tense of عِنْ ..... 129
Review of past tense verbs ..... 131
Summary of word stress rules ..... 134
Review drills ..... 137
LESSONTEN: ESTABLISHING COMMON GROUND ..... 139
Hollow verbs ..... 146
Numbers ..... 149
Counting ..... 152
Agreement for plural nouns ..... 155
Agreement for dual nouns ..... 158
Review drills ..... 161
LESSON ELEVEN: SEEKING AND GIVING INFORMATION ..... 163
Verbal nouns ..... 169
Demonstrative phrases ..... 170
The present tense ..... 172
Pronouns as objects of verbs ..... 175
Arabic modal expressions ..... 178
حتّت "In order to, so (that), to" ..... 182
كل "All, the whole; every, each" ..... 183
Review drills ..... 186
LESSON TWELVE: PERSONAL NEEDS AND FAMILY ..... 189
Hollow verbs-past tense ..... 193
Hollow verbs-present tense ..... 195
Use of بد" "to want" ..... 199
Verb strings ..... 202
أن ..... 203
Use of لِّنّا ..... 204
Comparative and superlative ..... 206
Telling time ..... 210
Review drills ..... 213
LESSON THIRTEEN: REVIEW ..... 217
LESSON FOURTEEN: HANDLING A PROBLEM ..... 233
Relative clauses ..... 237
وَحْدي "Alone, by myself" ..... 240
رَ Future marker ..... 241
Defective verbs ..... 243
إجا "To come" ..... 246
Doubled verbs ..... 249
صار "To become; happen; befall" ..... 25
Review drills ..... 254
LESSON FIFTEEN: EATING OUT ..... 257
Verb forms ..... 262
Quadriliteral verbs ..... 265
Imperatives ..... 266
Use of إيّا ..... 272
نَفس Use of ..... 274
Review drills ..... 275
LESSON SIXTEEN: BARGAINING AND BUYING ..... 277
"Since, seeing as, inasmuch as" ..... 281
لازم يَكون عِنْدي "Have to have, must have" ..... 282
Use of قَعْدما قْلما ..... 284
Negative imperative ..... 286
Conditional sentences ..... 288
Review drills ..... 292
Arabic-English Glossary ..... 296
English-Arabic Glossary ..... 326
Appendix I: Names of the Months and Months of the Islamic Calendar ..... 361
Appendix 2: Summary Verb List by Form and Verbal Noun ..... 363

## Contents of the MP3 Files

A CD containing MP3 files accompanies this book. MP3 files can be played on computers with a CD drive, on MP3-compatible portable CD players, and on MP3compatible CD/DVD players. The files can also be copied onto portable MP3 players and onto MP3-enabled handheld devices. Much of the material was remastered from the original audiocassettes, and the sound quality reflects the early technology of the originals.

| Track | Page | Lesson | Drill | Time |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- | :---: |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | Matrix dialogue | $1: 50$ |
| 2 | 2 |  | Basic information | $2: 11$ |
| 3 | 2 |  | Vocabulary and Supplementary vocabulary | $3: 16$ |
| 4 | 5 |  | Drill 1: Comprehension | $1: 03$ |
| 5 | 5 |  | Drill 2: True or false | $1: 00$ |
| 6 | 5 |  | Drill 3: Matching | $1: 05$ |
| 7 | 6 |  | Drill 5: Comprehension | $1: 36$ |
| 8 | 9 |  | Task 1 | $1: 56$ |
| 9 | 9 |  | Task 2 | $3: 11$ |
| 10 | 11 | 2 | Matrix dialogue | $1: 32$ |
| 11 | 12 |  | Basic information | $2: 23$ |
| 12 | 12 |  | Vocabulary | $1: 53$ |
| 13 | 13 |  | Supplementary vocabulary | $1: 29$ |
| 14 | 14 |  | Drill 1: Comprehension | $2: 18$ |
| 15 | 16 |  | Drill 3: Sorting out | $1: 58$ |
| 16 | 16 |  | Drill 4: True or false | $2: 14$ |
| 17 | 19 |  | Task 1 | $3: 26$ |
| 18 | 19 |  | Task 2 | $2: 48$ |
| 19 | 21 | 3 | Matrix dialogue | $1: 18$ |
| 20 | 22 |  | Basic information | $3: 24$ |
| 21 | 23 |  | Vocabulary and Supplementary vocabulary | $3: 47$ |
| 22 | 27 |  | Drill 4: True or false | $1: 47$ |
| 23 | 29 |  | Drill 7: True or false | $1: 39$ |
| 24 | 32 |  | Task |  |


| 25 | 35 | 4 | Matrix dialogue | 1:56 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 26 | 36 |  | Basic Information | 3:20 |
| 27 | 37 |  | Vocabulary | 10:57 |
| 28 | 43 |  | Drill 4: True or false | 1:56 |
| 29 | 46 |  | Task | 2:56 |
| 30 | 49 | 5 | Matrix dialogue | 1:50 |
| 31 | 50 |  | Basic information | 1:28 |
| 32 | 50 |  | Vocabulary | 6:29 |
| 33 | 51 |  | Supplementary vocabulary | 0:47 |
| 34 | 56 |  | Drill 3: Question and Answer | 2:18 |
| 35 | 56 |  | Drill 4: True or false | 1:56 |
| 36 | 61 |  | Task 1 | 1:23 |
| 37 | 62 |  | Task 2 | 3:30 |
| 38 | 67 | 6 | Drill 8: Listening comprehension | 3:21 |
| 39 | 69 | 7 | Matrix dialogue | 3:58 |
| 40 | 70 |  | Basic information part 1 | 2:13 |
| 41 | 71 |  | Basic information part 2 | 2:54 |
| 42 | 72 |  | Vocabulary part 1 | 6:37 |
| 43 | 72 |  | Vocabulary part 2 | 3:31 |
| 44 | 73 |  | Supplementary vocabulary | 1:08 |
| 45 | 81 |  | Drill 14: Listening comprehension | 2:40 |
| 46 | 84 | 8 | Matrix dialogue | 3:51 |
| 47 | 84 |  | Basic dialogue | 3:27 |
| 48 | 85 |  | Vocabulary | 8:20 |
| 49 | 86 |  | Supplementary vocabulary | 2:18 |
| 50 | 94 |  | Grammar notes II: Possessive pronoun suffixes | 2:24 |
| 51 | 97 |  | Grammar notes III: "To have" | 1:04 |
| 52 | 99 |  | Grammar notes IV: Past tense conjugation | 0:54 |
| 53 | 104 |  | Grammar notes VI: Colors | 1:08 |
| 54 | 109 |  | Listening task | 1:10 |
| 55 | 114 | 9 | Matrix dialogue | 2:27 |
| 56 | 114 |  | Basic dialogue | 1:21 |
| 57 | 114 |  | Basic dialogue read slowly | 3:05 |
| 58 | 115 |  | Vocabulary | 9:18 |
| 59 | 116 |  | Supplementary vocabulary | 3:26 |
| 60 | 121 |  | Grammar notes I: Subject pronouns | 1:51 |
| 61 | 131 |  | Drill 9: Past tense conjugation | 1:27 |
| 62 | 137 |  | Drill 1: Question and answer | 2:14 |
| 63 | 140 | 10 | Matrix dialogue | 2:17 |
| 64 | 140 |  | Basic dialogue | 1:47 |
| 65 | 140 |  | Basic dialogue read slowly | 4:50 |

$66 \quad 141$ Vocabulary ..... 11:33
$67 \quad 142$ Supplementary vocabulary ..... 4:23
$68 \quad 147$ Grammar notes I: Hollow verbs ..... 0:55$70 \quad 160$
164
$71 \quad 164$$72 \quad 164$
73 ..... 164
74 ..... 165
75166 ..... 66
76 ..... 173
77 ..... 186
78190 ..... 90
$69 \quad 149$
2:34
2:34
Grammar notes II: Numbers
Grammar notes II: Numbers
2:18
2:18
Listening exercise
Listening exercise
3:00
11 Matrix dialogue
2:04
2:04
Basic dialogue
Basic dialogue
5:54
Basic dialogue read slowly
14:35
Vocabulary
3:40
Supplementary vocabulary
0:52
Grammar notes III: The present tense
190
80
81 ..... 191
82 ..... 193
83 ..... 193
84 ..... 195
85 ..... 209
86233 ..... 233
87 ..... 234
$88 \quad 234$
89236$90 \quad 241$
91 ..... 244
92 ..... 246
93 ..... 249
9425715 Matrix dialogue
12 Matrix dialogue ..... 2:23 ..... 2:36
Task 1
$79 \quad 190$
2:08
2:08
Basic dialogue
Basic dialogue
4:26
Basic dialogue read slowly
12:47
Vocabulary
2:43
Supplementary vocabulary
1:47
Grammar notes I: Hollow verbs-Past tense
3:22
Grammar notes II: Hollow verbs-Present tense
1:37
Drill 13: Question and answer
3:39
14 Matrix dialogue
2:27
Basic dialogue
5:16
Basic dialogue read slowly
13:26
Vocabulary
1:13
Grammar notes III: Future marker
1:27
Grammar notes IV: Defective Verbs
1:23
Grammar notes V: "To come"
0:47
Grammar notes VI: Doubled verbs3:33
258
96
260
97
261
98
265
99
277
100 ..... 27716 Matrix dialogue
95 ..... 258
2:46
2:46
Basic dialogue
Basic dialogue
4:53
4:53
Basic dialogue read slowly ..... 13:08
Supplementary vocabulary ..... 3:40
Grammar notes II: Quadriliteral verbs ..... 0:49
101 ..... 278
Basic dialogue ..... 2:20
102 ..... 278
103 ..... 279
104 ..... 281
105289
1062912:31
Basic dialogue read slowly ..... 4:56
Vocabulary ..... 9:12
Supplementary vocabulary ..... 1:27
Drill 7: Comprehension ..... 2:18
Task ..... 0:50

## Arabic Research at Georgetown University

In the past 40 years, the world of research in Arabic theoretical linguistics has expanded considerably, but the production of professional quality textbooks and reference books for colloquial Arabic has remained limited. Despite the passage of years, the Richard Slade Harrell Arabic Series has consistently been in demand from Georgetown University Press because of the quality of research that went into its composition, the solid theoretical foundations for its methodology, and the comprehensive coverage of regional Arabic speech communities.

The Arabic Department at Georgetown University (now Department of Arabic Language, Literature and Linguistics) recognizes the need to sustain the tradition of research and publication in Arabic dialects and has continued dialectology field research and textbook production, most notably with Margaret (Omar) Nydell's Syrian Arabic Video Course, a three-year research project funded by Center for the Advancement of Language Learning (CALL) from 1991-94. Starting in 2002, Dr. Nydell initiated a four-year dialectology research project aimed at producing "conversion" courses to assist advanced students of Modern Standard Arabic in converting their knowledge and skills of written Arabic to proficiency in selected Arabic dialects. This project is part of a proposal prepared by the National Capital Language Resource Center under the directorship of Dr. James E. Alatis and Dr. Anna Chamot, and funded by the U.S. Department of Education.

The first Arabic dialect tackled under this research project was Iraqi, and the Iraqi conversion short course was field tested successfully in the summers of 2003, 2004, and 2005. In developing the materials for the Iraqi conversion course, two of the most authoritative English sources of information were the seminal texts produced by Wallace Erwin and published by Georgetown University Press in the 1960s, and which the press has reissued: A Basic Course in Iraqi Arabic and A Short Reference Grammar of Iraqi Arabic.

We pay tribute to the tradition begun and led by Richard Harrell, the founder of this series, and founder of the original Arabic Research Program at Georgetown University. Harrell's scholarship and creative energy set a standard in the field and yielded an unprecedented and as yet unsurpassed series of, as he put it, "practical tools for the increasing number of Americans whose lives bring them into contact with the Arab
world." Now, in 2005, Harrell's aims and achievements possess fresh relevance for the future and form a firm foundation on which to build.

In 2005, the Syrian Arabic video course will be updated and revised for publication through the NCLRC grant and through the support of the Center for Advanced Proficiency in Arabic (CAPA), a newly established full-year, accelerated, intensive Arabic "flagship" program at Georgetown, funded by the National Security Education program. For more information about the Department of Arabic Language, Literature and Linguistics at Georgetown University, its course offerings, its degree programs, its certificate programs, and its research agenda, see our web page at www.georgetown. edu/departments/arabic and also www.georgetown.edu/arabic/capa.htm.

## Preface

In the fifteen years since the publication of Formal Spoken Arabic: Basic Course, considerable research has called attention to the role of this variety of Arabic in public life, both formal and informal. Studies of Media Arabic, Educated Arabic, and Educated Spoken Arabic (ESA) have revealed commonalities in these spoken Arabic idioms that have important implications for teaching Arabic as a foreign language. Formal Spoken Arabic and Educated Spoken Arabic are essentially the same phenomenon: a kind of Arabic whose existence on the formality spectrum ranges to about the upper-middle level. For an analysis of the formality levels of spoken Arabic, see especially Badawi (1985), who identifies five levels of Arabic:

| Level one: | fuşhā al-turāth |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | Classical Arabic |
| Level two: | fuşhā al- ${ }^{\text {caṣr }}$ |
|  | Modern Standard Arabic |
| Level three: | 'āmmiyyat al-muthaqqafin |
|  | Educated Spoken Arabic/Formal Spoken Arabic |
| Level four: | ${ }^{\text {caummiyyat al-mutanawwirīn }}$ |
|  | Semi-literate Spoken Arabic |
| Level five: | ' $\overline{\text { a mmiyyat al- }{ }^{\text {a }} \text { ummiyyin }}$ |
|  | Illiterate spoken Arabic |

For most of the history of Arabic teaching in the West, either Classical Arabic (CA) (Badawi's level one) or, more recently, Modern Standard Arabic (MSA) (Badawi's level two), have been the options of choice for almost all academic programs. As programs and curricula shifted toward the more communicative in the 1990s and as oral proficiency became a learning goal, MSA materials have been adapted to be more communicative in their orientation. However, the fact remains that MSA (and certainly CA) are neither spontaneously spoken languages nor authentic vehicles for spoken proficiency. A few programs (e.g., University of Michigan, Brigham Young University, Georgetown University) teach spoken vernacular Arabic (such as Levantine or Egyptian) in addition to MSA. The choice of whether to teach ESA or FSA as a viable spoken medium for nonnative speakers has been discussed by Agius (1990),

Badawi (1985), and Ryding (1991, 1994, 1995). I advocate its value for learners who need a spoken medium of expression that can be used in a wide variety of places and situations. At Georgetown University, FSA is normally taught after a year of MSA study.

This brings up an important point: Formal Spoken Arabic Basic Course with MP3 Files is not intended for use by beginners for self-instruction. It assumes previous or parallel instruction in MSA and in Arabic script and phonology. Many college students who start out and stick with literary Arabic are discouraged by their inability to use authentic language for engaging in informal conversation with Arab friends and acquaintances, so there is a need to take their conversational goals and skills into account. Sometimes, long-term curricula that focus on reading and writing skills will omit colloquial Arabic study altogether, with the old-fashioned justification that students can "pick up" everyday speaking skills if or when they get a chance to study in an Arab country. It is important to recognize, however, that instructed development of primary discourse competence needs to be addressed if westerners seriously intend to progress to advanced and superior levels of proficiency.

It has been my pleasure to work with my colleague Dr. David Mehall on revising this book, and I have him to thank for using his long experience teaching FSA to bring insights into the Arabic teaching and learning process.

## Selected References for Educated Spoken Arabic I Formal Spoken Arabic

Agius, Dionisius A. 1990. "Which strategy for teaching Arabic?" In Diglossic Tension: Teaching Arabic for Communication (Leeds: Folia Scholastica).
Badawi, El-Said M. 1985. "Educated Spoken Arabic: A problem in teaching Arabic as a foreign language." In Scientific and Humanistic Dimensions of Language, ed. Kurt R. Jankowsky (Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press).
Elgibali, Alaa. 1993. "Stability and language variation in Arabic: Cairene and Kuwaiti dialects." Perspectives on Arabic Linguistics V, eds. Mushira Eid and Clive Holes (Amsterdam/ Philadelphia: John Benjamins).
Mitchell, Terence F. 1980. Dimensions of style in a grammar of Educated Spoken Arabic. Archivum Linguisticum 11:89-106.

- 1985. "Sociolinguistic and sty listic dimensions of the Educated Spoken Arabic of Egypt and the Levant." Language Standards and Their Codification, ed. Douglas J. Woods (Exeter: Exeter Univ. Press).
__. 1986. "What is Educated Spoken Arabic?" International Journal of the Sociology of Language 61:7-32.
Mitchell, Terence F., and Shahir El-Hassan. 1994. Modality, Mood and Aspect in Spoken Arabic (London: Kegan Paul Intemational).
Ryding, Karin C. 1991. "Proficiency Despite Diglossia: A New Approach for Arabic." Modern Language Journal, vol. 75, no. 2, (1991) pp. 212-18.
——. 1994. "Fostering a learning community for Arabic." Theory into Practice 33, 1:23-28.
——. 1995. "Discourse competence in TAFL: Skill levels and choice of language variety in the Arabic classroom," in Teaching of Arabic as a Foreign Language: Issues and Directions, ed. Mahmoud Al-Batal. Provo, Utah: American Association of Teachers of Arabic, pp. 223-31.
-_. 2005. "Teaching Arabic in the United States." In A Handbook for Arabic Language Teaching Professionals in the 21 st Century, edited by Elizabeth England, Kassem Wahba, and Zeinab Taha (NY: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates).

Karin C. Ryding
Washington, D.C.
January 2005

## க

The Arabic taught in this book enables students to communicate with educated speakers of Arabic from across the globe. It is a response to the problem of diglossia, which is described in the introduction. It provides students of Modern Standard Arabic (MSA) with alternative speech patterns to the stilted literary language they encounter as novice learners of MSA. Generally, it can be taught alongside MSA in the first year, as has been the case for foreign language professionals in various government agencies, or it can be introduced after the first, second, or third year of instruction of MSA, depending upon the intensity of the program. At Georgetown University, students have traditionally taken it after the first year prior to their departure for a semester abroad at the American University in Cairo. The primary benefit of the Formal Spoken Arabic (FSA) course is that it fills the gap that MSA is unable to fill when it comes to listening comprehension and speaking in the context of everyday functions, such as giving or receiving directions, making reservations, dealing with unexpected problems, or haggling over prices. In addition, it builds on the grammar and vocabulary found in any introductory MSA course, providing real-world use of verb morphology, such as imperatives and modals, and of noun patterns, such as colors, place names, and geographical terms. Finally, it serves as a viable introduction to any map of the Arab world course and prepares students for the task of interacting with both scripted and unscripted texts of media Arabic. FSA at Georgetown University has been offered as a nonintensive, year-long course worth six credits per academic year or three credits per semester.

I have personally taught from this book for more than ten years as I moved through the ranks from teaching assistant to senior lecturer in the Department of Arabic Language, Literature, and Linguistics at Georgetown University. Staying abreast of the constantly changing political scene across the Arab world can be a daunting task,
but one made much easier thanks to WikipediA, a free-content, multilingual encyclopedia online found at http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Arabic_language, which I bighly recommend.

When teaching with Formal Spoken Arabic Basic Course with MP3 Files, I structure the course so that I can complete Lessons 1-8 in the first semester and Lessons 916 in the second semester. For the matrix dialogues, I develop listening comprehension sheets so that the students can derive the greatest benefit from the experience. Students sometimes voice concern that they are not given the full written text of the matrix dialogues. I often complement these listening activities with news clips from al-Jazeera and, once again, I assign students specific listening exercises without giving them the full transcript of the text. I have found that such listening comprehension tasks are part of the everyday experience of the language learner, and students are quickly convinced of their utility as they move through the course. As a certified ACTFL OPI tester for Arabic, I can attest that after an academic year in this course, students can attain elementary and intermediate proficiency levels as a direct result of the drills and the speaking and listening comprehension tasks in this book. This course helps build the communicative competence students need to willingly interact with native speakers with confidence.

## David J. Mehall

College Park, Maryland
January 2005

## Preface to the first edition

The original version of this text was prepared during the years that I was head of Arabic language training at the Foreign Service Institute (1980-85) to serve as the core for the first twenty-two weeks of the Formal Spoken Arabic course. It was field-tested at every stage of its development for clarity, effectiveness and relevance to the needs of Americans working in the Arab world.

The approach is based on my teaching experience as well as findings from the field of second language acquisition research. It is designed to foster communicative competence in Arabic on all levels, and to develop speaking proficiency without abandoning Arabic script.

Formal Spoken Arabic: Basic Course is, as far as I know, the first Arabic language text to use a nongrammar-based approach. That is, the rationale for its organization and presentation of language materials is functional and situational rather than grammatically determined. Grammar is, of course, covered in each lesson but it serves the ends of the situations or functions being taught rather than motivating the structure of the course.

It differs from other basic Arabic texts in that it teaches a form of spoken Arabic that is closer to the written standard, and is the first spoken Arabic text to use Arabic script instead of transcription to represent the sounds of spoken Arabic. One of the incidental (but not unintended) results of using Arabic script from the beginning of spoken Arabic training at FSI was reinforcement and improvement of overall reading skills. There was a substantial increase in student reading proficiency scores after introduction of this text, even though reading proficiency is, of course, tested in Modern Standard Arabic (MSA).

This text is not meant to replace any of the excellent and time-tested texts for MSA, since it does not deal with the same variety of language. It may, however, in combination with MSA, serve academic Arabic departments as a tool for increasing spoken Arabic skills at the elementary and intermediate levels, an important consideration in today's proficiency-oriented world.

Karin C. Ryding<br>Washington, D.C.<br>October 1989

## Acknowledgments to the second edition

I am deeply grateful for the cooperation, enthusiasm, and input of many Formal Spoken Arabic students at Georgetown over the past 15 years, and to the faculty members who have taught this course, Dr. Amin Bonnah, Dr. David Mehall, and Dr. Elizabeth Bergman. Their insights, feedback, and support for this innovative text have been essential to its success in an academic setting.

In particular, I wish to thank Dr. Mehall for his unstinting efforts in revising and reformatting the text for this second edition, and I also wish to thank the editorial and production team at Georgetown University Press who have made this second edition possible. My appreciation also goes to Gail Grella, associate director of Georgetown University Press, whose constant support and encouragement have made a great difference not only to this book, but to all the publications in the Georgetown Classics in Arabic Language and Linguistics series.

Karin C. Ryding
Sultan Qaboos bin Said Professor of Arabic
Georgetown University
Washington, D.C.


I would like to acknowledge the participation of Mr. Raad Sheshany. He provided invaluable technical support in the creation and manipulation of the new MP3 files. It is also his voice that we hear reading the Arabic portion of the updated files themselves. Without his valuable contribution, this project would not have reached fruition.

David J. Mehall
Research Associate
Center for the Advanced Study of Language
College Park, Maryland

## Introduction

This text is designed to serve as core material for the first six months of intensive spoken Arabic training at the Foreign Service Institute (FSI), U.S. Department of State. Students of Arabic are generally enrolled at FSI for twenty-four or fourty-four weeks, after which some may go on to further training at the Arabic Field School, while others proceed directly to posts in the Arab world. About two-thirds of student time at FSI is devoted to studying the spoken language and one-third to studying the literary language (MSA). Besides covering this and other FSI text material, students engage in simulation activities, field trips, and content-based language activities built around substantive regional topics. So this text is by no means the entire course but provides continuity to spoken Arabic training. On several counts, this text represents a departure from traditional spoken Arabic instruction.

1. Design. It is tailored to the specific needs of foreign affairs personnel serving the U.S. government abroad, focusing on practical communicative tasks in meaningful contexts. The organizing principle behind the lessons is, therefore, not presentation of grammatical points, but functions within situations. Basic dialogues, for example, always involve an American and an Arab, rather than Arabs only and embody types of exchanges likely to occur under various circumstances. Grammar points are discussed and drilled as they arise and as they relate to the communicative needs of a situation.
2. Language. The Arab world is characterized by a linguistic phenomenon known as diglossia, meaning that the spoken and written languages are substantially different. The literary language has essentially retained the lexical and grammatical features of classical Arabic, and is uniform from one Arab country to another. Spoken Arabic has been much less codified and more pliant, adapting quickly to the everyday needs of colloquial speech, incorporating foreign words, reducing grammatical categories, and evolving into regional dialects characteristic of specific geographical areas. Most of these dialects are mutually intelligible to native speakers, but some widely separated ones diverge considerably from each other. The issue of which variety of spoken language to teach foreigners has therefore been a thorny one, with little choice between teaching a spoken form of literary Arabic or one specific dialect.

At FSI, students are trained in communicative skills to serve them in a variety of posts in the Arab world. Feedback from officers in the field has consistently and strongly advocated the need for spoken Arabic skills that can be used widely throughout the Middle East. Experience has shown that the most practical language to teach foreign affairs personnel going to the Arab East (excluding Egypt, the Sudan, and North Africa) is a standardized variant of spoken Arabic, colloquial enough not to sound pedantic and flexible enough to be of use throughout the Arab East.

The language described and taught in this text is not a spoken dialect of a specific Arab region. Within the continuum of spoken Arabic variants, registers, and styles it is an intermediate language which embodies characteristics of interdialectal communication, as well as aspects of the standard literary language, and which has proven extremely useful to Foreign Service Officers assigned to various posts in the Arab world.

Although pronunciation and internal vowelization of Formal Spoken Arabic (FSA) reflect the conventions of literary Arabic, shared dialect features constitute the core of FSA (lexical items such as $r a \bar{a} h, j \bar{a} b, m i s h$ and $l \bar{a} z i m$, and morphological features such as elimination of case and mood inflections). Where dialects diverge and choices of everyday vocabulary items had to be made (e.g., the choices for "what" and "now), Levantine terms were chosen. Teachers may of course modify these items or offer other options.

This language variant has come to be known as FSA through the years it has been taught at the FSI, both in Washington and in the field schools in Beirut and Tunis. It is formal because it is a slightly higher, more "educated" register than everyday speech, and also because pronunciation of consonants and internal vowelization of words are done for the most part in accord with literary Arabic. Moreover, the overall structure and function of this variety has been observed as the type of dialect-bridging discourse used among native Arabic speakers from different dialect regions on occasions when they interact.

Limited linguistic research has been done into the actual structure of interdialectal, formalized or noncolloquial spoken Arabic discourse, and consequently the elements of the variety of Arabic presented in this text result to a large extent from the insights and intuitions of educated native speakers who form the staff of instructors at the Foreign Service Institute, both in Washington and abroad. It is their pioneering efforts and the distillation of years of experience in language training which have resulted in the consolidation of this extremely pragmatic and adaptable form of spoken Arabic.
3. Script. Another feature of this text, which makes it a departure from most textbooks of spoken Arabic, is that it uses Arabic script rather than transliteration. Student reaction to the early introduction of script has been overwhelmingly enthusiastic. It not only prevents the inevitable pitfalls of learning a transcription system which must then be abandoned, but also reinforces student grasp and eventual command of the written language.
4. Approach. As a consequence of the decision to use Arabic script, the introductory lessons are designed and taught in such a way as to allow students gradual, systematic access to the sounds and script. This is accomplished in four ways:

## (1) Comprehension first

Before requiring students to speak in Arabic, a groundwork of listening and reading comprehension is built, on the theory that comprehension precedes and provides a foundation for later production. The first five lessons of this text are designed to build comprehension skills by beginning with very partial recognition tasks, forming a reservoir of lexical and grammatical information for the student to draw on.

## (2) Delayed oral production

Having decided to initiate the student through reading and listening Arabic, oral production is not required during the first five lessons of the text. This does not mean that it doesn't happen; it frequently does, precisely because students are not under pressure to produce fully formed, precise utterances. Nor does it mean they are passive recipients of data. Students must react to what they see and hear in various ways, as explained in the Student's Notes section and in the various drills and other exercises included in each lesson.

## (3) Semantic load

Consistent with the above concept of avoiding overload, the major portion of vocabulary in the first part of the text is semantically "transparent, "i.e., it is based largely on proper names-of people, places, and things. These names are already familiar to most students, such as heads of government and geographical descriptions that include names of cities, countries, and major landforms. The content of these lessons is therefore informative and easy to access semantically, so that students have a chance to see and hear authentic data in Arabic that is familiar to them. They can therefore focus most of their energies on the way these data look or sound, while at the same time accumulating or reinforcing basic facts about the Arab world.

## (4) Concurrent instruction

During the initial phase of this text, Arabic students at FSI spend one-third of their day working on it, another third in the language laboratory, and the last one-third working with McCaurus and Rammuny's A Programmed Course in Modern Written Arabic Phonology and Script. Thus they work their way simultaneously through two texts, this one that focuses on comprehension and gradual mastery of substantial amounts of information in Arabic, and another which is designed to give them pronunciation, reading, and writing skills in a highly structured, incremental way. During the time they spend with A Programmed Course, they are engaged in traditional activities such as pronunciation drills, reading aloud (chorally and individually), learning to write the

Arabic alphabet, and dictation drills. Homework assignments include both writing and listening exercises. By the end of three weeks (about thirty hours of instruction in each text), students have finished A Programmed Course as well as the first seven lessons of Formal Spoken Arabic Basic Course with MP3 Files.

At this point they are ready to switch to the second stage of the course, Lessons 916, which are centered around tasks and situations in spoken Arabic. In addition to a basic dialogue followed by discussion, drilling of vocabulary and salient grammatical points, these lessons include overheard conversations (matrix dialogues) which are on CD, structured speaking activities designed to help students develop conversational coping skills and strategies. Experienced teachers will doubtless recognize types of activities they already incorporate into their classes, but detailed instructions are provided for each exercise in both Modern Standard Arabic and English to describe procedures that have been useful and successful in field testing this material.

## TEACHER'S NOTES

Lessons 1-6. You will find the approach used in Lessons 1-6 very different from traditional grammar/translation or audio-lingual approaches. Underpinning these lessons is an assumption that learners can internalize language faster if they are not pressured or required initially to produce it. This initial phase, which is called "a comprehension phase," therefore resembles language acquisition in a natural setting and is designed to take advantage of the natural human ability to "take in" language before generating it.

It is important to realize, however, that the learners in the comprehension phase are not being passive recipients, but are called upon to respond to what they hear and see in various ways, either through physical actions (such as pointing or writing a number instead of an Arabic word), or through response in English. If some students want to use Arabic for their responses sooner than Lesson 7, that is perfectly acceptable, but it is important for the long-term effectiveness of this approach that target language production by the learner not be forced.

Instructions. Instructions for exercises and drills are provided both in English and in Modern Standard Arabic (MSA) in all lessons so that students get used to seeing MSA as an instructional language, and so that less-experienced Arabic teachers can be clear as to the procedures for the exercise. The vocabulary used in the instructions is not included in the glossaries but teachers should feel free to help students understand the Arabic instructions and to use them as additional learning tools.

Moreover, experienced teachers will note that instructions for practicing verb paradigms and for dialogue rehearsal, memorization, and variation are very explicit. These are intended to guide less-experienced teachers and to focus on the need for structured exercises in addition to and as a basis for more meaningful and communicative activities.

Meaningful use, tasks, and speaking activities. In addition to the many standard drills provided in this text, the tasks and speaking exercises are designed to practice the implementation of language skills in semistructured environments where students are expected to use Arabic for problem solving, for informing, and for other basic communicative purposes. Audio for matrix and basic dialogues, along with various drills, are provided as MP3 files on the accompanying CD. Each place in the text with a corresponding audio portion is indicated with an image of a set of headphones. The steps involved in the speaking activities may seem very familiar and even obvious to experienced teachers but are provided as models for new teachers and also as bases for further activities, designed and initiated by teachers and/or students. Matrix dialogues are not intended for total comprehension but rather as holistic listening experiences that provide a meaningful context for the lesson content.

What this text does. This text was designed to provide a central core around which to build a proficiency-based spoken Arabic course. It is not and should not be the totality of a course but rather a framework for developing spoken Arabic skills. Teachers should feel free to incorporate vocabulary, realia, exercises, and other activities geared to their students' particular learning goals. For a variety of drills and exercises, teachers may find it useful to employ Cuisenaire rods or "Algebricks." Cuisenaire rods are colored blocks of various sizes used in a variety of applications in teaching mathematical and linguistic concepts. They are available online at http://www.etacuisenaire.com and on other sites, such as eBay.com. There are also many websites that discuss the application and uses of the colored rods in the classroom.

## STUDENT'S NOTES

Contents. We are basing this course on two assumptions:

A1. It should help you to get ready for life and work at post.
A2. What you learn will help you practice.

Our conclusion from these assumptions is:
Cl. What you practice should be-more closely and more frequently than in many language courses-related to what y ou will be doing overseas.

Skills. We make three further assumptions:

A3. Right now you know little or no Arabic.
A4. By the end of the course you will know quite a bit of Arabic.
A5. Even with all the Arabic you are going to learn here, you'll find at post that the Arabs still use a lot more of the language than you know.

From these assumptions we draw two conclusions:

C2. We should teach you (or helpy ou to learn) a lot of Arabic.
C3. We should help you to develop your natural ability to deal with language that is over your head.

Overall design. This course consists of a series of stages. Each stage in its own way will be consistent with the above assumptions and conclusions. In the first few weeks, you will become familiar with the writing system and the pronunciation of Arabic. Once you have begun to be comfortable with the mechanics of making sounds and writing them down, you will work with increasingly close and full simulations of what you will be doing in the Middle East.

The first stage. In line with Cl , the content goal of the first stage will be to teach you-or to verify what you already know-some fundamental facts about geography and politics of the Arab world.

The linguistic goal of stage 1 will be to ensure that you can understand and talk about this information in Arabic.

Our third conclusion (C3) is the basis for a feature that may be new to y ou but that we think you will enjoy. At the beginning of each lesson, before the teaching material, y ou will find short segments of conversation between two Arabs-conversation which is completely natural, with no simplification or slowing down for the benefit of foreigners. Your task with regard to these segments will not be to reproduce them or even to understand them but only to explore and develop in certain specific ways your ability to cope with the language.

Stage 1 consists of seven lessons.
During the first five lessons you are not required to say anything in Arabic. There is a reason for this. We want your brain to take in many, many examples of each of the sounds of the language. Further, we want these multiple exposures to gel into a set of auditory and visual composites, on which you will draw when called upon to pronounce Arabic in Lesson 6. For most people, premature oral production in a new language seems to interfere with this gelling process. Hence, the silence of your first few days. But silence doesn't mean inactivity. Indeed, if you are to learn anything, you need to do something. What we are asking you to do during the first five lessons, therefore, is to comprehend what you hear or see and then react accordingly.

## Stage 1 lessons:

1. Matrix dialogue. The lesson opens with a recorded conversation between two Arabs. This conversation includes an exchange of information on the same general topic
that you will be working with for the rest of the lesson. For this reason, we have called this conversation the matrix dialogue for this lesson.

Because this conversation is an unrestricted exchange between two native speakers, you will be unable to react to it as language students are usually expected to react to new material-by understanding it, repeating, drilling on it, and so forth. You will therefore be thrown back on your general resources. We suggest that you follow this procedure:
1.1. Play the conversation once. Listen for sex and age of the speakers, and try to guess such things as their relationship (father and son? profess or and student? friends? strangers?), the subject matter (information about air travel? an oral examination? discussion of whether to buy a new book? discussion of recent events?), and the tone (informative? joking? mildly critical or argumentative? astonished?).
1.2. Play the conversation a second time in order to change or confirm your guesses.
1.3. Compare your guesses with those of your classmates.
1.4. Listen to the conversation a third time.
1.5. Check your guesses with the instructor. Don't be alarmed if some of them turn out to have been based on misinterpretations. This is one first step toward clarifying your perception of spoken Arabic. Don't ask your instructor to translate the conversation for you. That's not the point.
1.6. Now that you know a little more about the conversation, listen to it once more.

This work with the matrix dialogue should take somewhere between fifteen and twenty minutes. At the end of the time, you will have:

- begun to get a feeling for what Arabic sounds like in real life (a very general contribution to Cl );
- heard a few familiar words as they are pronounced in Arabic (a first step towards C2);
- had a bit of experience with responding to what you can hear, rather than focusing on what you can't understand (an example of C3).

2. Basic information. In the matrix dialogue, we deliberately overload y ou by giving you material that you couldn't possibly follow. We've already explained our reasons for doing that. But if you are to learn anything in this lesson, you must meet one item at a time. We must give you material in which you can identify everything that you hear so that you can begin to master it. This is the purpose of the central parts of the
lesson. The basic information section consists of a short narrative. This paragraph contains the facts which you will need in the drill and "meaningful use" which follow it.

A suggested procedure with this section is:
2.1. Listen to the basic information. Jot down, in the order in which they occur, any names of persons or places that you recognize. Leave blanks for the parts you don't understand. Repeat this step two or three times until you think you've found everything you are going to. (Don't repeat anything aloud at this time.)
2.2. Compare notes with your classmates.
2.3. In collaboration with your classmates, try to guess the meanings of the sentences and missing words. Fill in any blanks that you can.
2.4. Listen to the paragraph again to see if y our guesses make sense.
2.5. Check your guesses with y our instruct or.
2.6. Now that you know the meaning of the text, listen to it two or three more times, just to let the words sink in.

This activity should take between 15 and 25 minutes. At the end of that time, you will have:

- dealt with content which, though rudimentary, is still relevant to your job (C1);
- clearly identified all the words in the paragraph (C2);
- in steps a-d, further practiced your coping skills (C3).

3. Grammar notes. Obviously, as you go about learning Arabic you will need to know how the language works. The grammar notes in each lesson describe in fairly nontechnical terms the structures and rules that come up in the basic information part of the lesson. It is a good idea to read the grammar notes before you do the drills.
4. Drills, exercises, activities, and tasks. The drills in the first five lessons have been designed to draw on your comprehension or recognition skills. In each drill you will be expected to respond according to the instructions, based on your knowledge of Arabic up to that point, but you do not have to respond in Arabic.

In the "meaningful use" exercises you will find a few simple opportunities to respond to words with physical actions, since in life outside the classroom we frequently respond to words with actions, and to actions with words.

In the "task" section of the lesson you will be asked to apply what you have learned to a simple language-use task, thus implementing your knowledge for a specific purpose.

Note: In order to work with this text, you'll need to know what Arabic numerals look like, so here is an initial list of numbers with their English equivalents and their Arabic names.

| English | Arabic numeral | Arabic name |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 1 | واحد |
| 2 | $r$ | اثنّين |
| 3 | $r$ | **اثة |
| 4 | $\varepsilon$ | اربعة |
| 5 | - | خمسة |
| 6 | 7 | ستة |
| 7 | v | سبعة |
| 8 | $\wedge$ | ثُمانية |
| 9 | 9 | تسعة |
| 10 | 1. | عشرة |

Your teachers will go over the writing and pronunciation of these numbers with you.

## LESSON ONE

## الدرس الاول

## Heads of State

## OVERVIEW

In this lesson you are exposed mainly to names of people and places in Arabic. Arabic script is used but you are not expected to be able to read it just yet. It will be helpful for y ou to look at the script as you listen to your teacher and the CD and begin to get a feel for the sizes and shapes of words, most of whose meanings are already familiar to you. You are expected to manipulate the material in this lesson in various ways, as explained in the Student's Notes section and in the drills. Please read this section before you start the lesson to get a better understanding of your approach to these materials.

## MATRIX DIALOGUE

Listen to the matrix dialogue as instructed in the Student's Notes. Then, discuss it with your teacher.

## GRAMMAR POINTS

I. Equational sentences
II. Use of g"and"
III. Definite article

## BASIC INFORMATION

King Abdallah is from Jordan.
Prince Abdallah is from Saudi Arabia.
Prince Jaber Al-Ahmed is from Kuwait.
Mr. Emile Lahud is from Lebanon.
Mr. Iyad Allawi is from Iraq.
Mr. Bashar Al-Asad is from Syria.
Mr. Husni Mubarak is from Egypt.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { المعلومات الاساسية } \\
& \text { المعلومات الاساسية }
\end{aligned}
$$

## $\int$ vocabulary

lesson
first
king
Abdallah
from
Jordan
Kuwait
lah
and
Saudi Arabia
prince
Jabir Al-Ahmed

Mr.
المفردات

| lesson | دَرْس | Kuwait | الْحُوْيْتِ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| first | أَوَّل | Mr. | آلكِّيّلد |
| king | مَلِك | Emile Lahud | إميل لَحود |
| Abdallah | عَبْد اللّه | Lebanon | لُبْنان |
| from | مِنِ | Iyad Allawi | إياد عَلاوّإِي |
| Jordan | الأرْدُن | Iraq | الْعِر اق |
| and | , | Bashar Al-Asad | بَشار الأَسَدِ |
| Saudi Arabia | الكسَّوِّيَّة | Syria | سوريا |
| prince | امير | Husni Mubarak | حُسْنِ مُبارَك |
| Jabir Al-Ahmed | جابر الأَحْحْدِ | Eypt | رِصر |

## SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

مفردات إضافية

| who | مين | yes | نٌ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| where | وَيْن | no | V |

## GRAMMAR NOTES

## I. Equational sentences

One of the most basic sentence types in Arabic is of the "topic-comment" kind, where no verb is used. You may have heard in grammar school that no sentences can exist without a verb. That's true for English, but not for Arabic, because Arabic does not usually use a lexical equivalent for the verb "to be" in the present tense. Instead, it usually introduces a "topic" or "subject" and then adds a "comment" or "predicate."

The topic is usually some type of substantive-a noun, pronoun, or noun phrase. The comment can be a wide range of things-an adjective, prepositional phrase, or another noun, for example.

In this lesson the equational sentences are primarily of the type where there is a name and then a prepositional phrase. There are examples of these sentences in the basic information section and the drills of this lesson, e.g.:

Prince Abdallah (is) from Saudi Arabia.


What is said in Arabic is, literally, "Prince Abdallah from Saudi Arabia." The "is" is understood. More examples:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\text { Bashar Al-Asad (is) from Syria. } ب \text { بشار الأسد من سويا. }
\end{gathered}
$$

> Where (is) Lebanon?
> وين لبنان؟

## II. Use of g "and"

A list of Arab leaders is given in the basic information part of this lesson, each name (after the first) preceded by "and." In English "and" is not used so often, but in Arabic "and" is used the way we would use a comma. It is also used to start many sentences, which is generally not done in English.

## III. Definite article

A. Use in names

The definite article in Arabic is ${ }^{\circ}$. It is written as part of the word it defines. Thus, "the Iraq," "the Kuwait." Certain Arabic place names and names of people have the definite article and others do not, just as we say "the Sudan" and "Egypt." For example:

| Names with definite article |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Jordan | الاردن |
| Kuwait | الكويت |
| Saudi Arabia | السعودية |
| Al-Ahmad | الاحمد |
| Al-Asad | الاسد |

Names without definite article

| Egypt | مصر |
| :---: | :---: |
| Lebanon | لبنان |
| Syria | سوريا |
| Emil | 相 |
| Husni | حسي |

Bear in mind that proper nouns, with or without the definite article, are semantically definite. There is no hard and fast rule as to which proper nouns have the definite article and which do not, so the only way to learn them is through memorization.

## B. Pronunciation

The definite article is pronounced al-, el-, il- or sometimes just $l$-. When the definite article precedes certain sounds, the $l$ - is not pronounced. It is assimilated into the following sound and that sound, as a result, "doubles" or becomes stronger. F or example, the name of Saudi Arabia is pronounced $a s$-sa $a^{c} \bar{u} d i y y a$ in Arabic, doubling the s sound instead of pronouncing the $l$-.

The sounds or letters that assimilate the $l$ - of the definite article are called sun letters (hurūf shamsiyya) and include:


There is no indefinite article ("a" or "an") in literary Arabic.

So drill i: Comprehension

Listen to the following statements and write down in English the names of people and places that you recognize.
استمع الى الململ التالية واكتب بالابخليز ية الماء الاشخاص والبلاد الي تتعرف عليها.

1. $\qquad$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 1. الامير عبد الله من السعودية. } \\
& \text { r } \\
& \text { r. اميل لـود من لبنان. }
\end{aligned}
$$

2. $\qquad$
3. $\qquad$ \& . الملك عبد اللة من الاردن.
4. $\qquad$ ○. بشار الاسد من سوريا.

## DRILL 2:TRUE ORFALSE

التمرين الثاين: صح ام خطأ

Respond yes or no to the following statements.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { استمع إل البمل التالية وأجب بنعم أو لا. } \\
& \text { I } 1 \text {. حسين مبارك من لبنان. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r. r. اميل لـود من لبنانـ } \\
& \text { ع. الملك عبد الله من الارددن. } \\
& \text { • ـ بشّار الاصد من الكويت الريت } \\
& \text { 7. الامير عبد اللهُ من السعودية. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 3: Matching

While listening to the CD or your teacher, look at the four words in each line and select the word that matches the name of the country you hear:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { فيما انت تستمع اللى الشُريط تأمل الكلمات الاربع ئم ارسم خطنا تدت اسم تلك الدولة. } \\
& \text { ا. ا. البان }
\end{aligned}
$$



DRILL 4: COMPREHENSION

Circle the name of the country which appropriately completes the following sentences:


## $\delta_{\text {drill sic comprehension }}$

Listen to the following questions and answers and write down in English the names of people and places you can recognize.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { الستمع الى الاسئلة والاجوبة التالية طم اكتب بالابكليزية اسماء الاشخاص والدول } \\
& \text { التي يمكنك التعرف عليها. } \\
& \text { ا. مين حضر الاجتماع عن الاردن؟ (الملك عبد الله) }
\end{aligned}
$$

r. مين حضر الاجتماع عن سوريا؟ (السيل بشار الاسد)
ب. مين حضر الاجتماع من الكويت؟ (الامير جابر الاحمد)
ع . مين حضر الاجتماع عن السعودية؟ (الامير عبد الله)
0. مين حضر الاجتماع من لبنان؟ (السيد اميل لـود)

In this exercise, your teacher will ask questions about the location of certain Arab countries. You are to respond by indicating the correct place on the accompanying map.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { اشر على الخر يطة الى مواقع البلدان الي يذكرها لك الاستاذ. } \\
& \text { وين مصرب؟ وين الاردن؟ } \\
& \text { وين السعودية؟ وين الكويت؟ وين الردن } \\
& \text { وين العراق؟ وين سوريا؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

دول الوطن العربي


## DRILL 7:MEANINGFUL USE

In this exercise, you'll be asked to build a simulated map of the Arab world using colored rods and to point out which countries are where.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { في هذا التمرين يطلب الاستاذ منك ان ترسم خريطة تقريبية للعالم العربي بالقطع الـــــبـة التي يزودك } \\
& \text { هـا بيــ تبين عليها مواقع غخلف البلدان. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 8: MEANINGFUL USE

In this particular exercise the teacher uses the verb "to show, " saving "show me," followed by the name of the country. You are to respond by indicating the correct spot on the map.
 الامر »دله فتشير باصبعك الى الى موقع البلد المطلوب. دللي على لبنان. دلي على الستودية. دللي على اليمن.

## DRILL 9: MATCHING

Who's who? Listen to your teacher say the names of these Arab leaders and match the names with pictures that your teacher will show you. Teachers should have a collection of photos of prominent personalities to use with this and upcoming exercises.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { من يكون؟ فيما انت تصغي الى الاستاذ ينطق باسماء هؤلاء الزعماء العرب باو الو } \\
& \text { ان توفق ما بين الاسماء والصور. } \\
& \text {. } 1 \\
& \text { r. r. الامير عبد الله } \\
& \text { r. r. بشار الاسد } \\
& \text { ع . اللك عبد اللّ } \\
& \text { ○ اميل }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Staski

In this task you will listen to a short dialogue on the CD. Listen to it a couple of times just to get used to hearing the sentences. When you feel ready, listen carefully to the dialogue and try to pick out the names of people and places that are mentioned and write them in English below.

| People | Places |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |

## $\delta_{\text {TASK } 2}$

This is another listening task. There are five typical Arabic news items, each one dealing with a separate topic. First, just sit and listen intently to this a few times. Your task is then to listen and pick out any names of people or places (Arabic or non-Arabic) that you can identify. In English, write down a list of the names that you can identify and check them with your teacher.

It may help you to know that there are 9 names in the first item, 7 in the second, 5 in the third, 14 in the fourth, and 2 in the last.

## LESSON TWO



## Cities and Countries

## OVERVIEW

In this lesson you will see and hear more names of places in the Arab world, including, this time, cities as well as countries. You will also be exposed to some other words: a couple of pronouns ("he" and "she"), and the words for the various systems of government in the Arab countries ("kingdom," "republic," "state," "sultanate," and "emirate"). Additionally, you will find the words for "city" and "capital."

In Lesson one you had the question words "who" and "where." In this lesson you will have the question word "what."

The approach used in this lesson parallels that of lesson one. Again, listen to your teacher and the CD as you look at the script to get an idea of how the words look and how they fit together in sentences.

## S matrix dalogue

Listen to the matrix dialogue on the CD as instructed in the Student's Notes. Then, discuss it with your teacher.

## GRAMMAR POINTS

I. Equational sentences
II. Gender
III. The construct phrase

## $\int$ BASIC INFORMATION

## المعلوات الاساسية

## Part A

Jordan is a kingdom.
Egypt is a republic.
Kuwait is a state.
Oman is a sultanate.
Abu Dhabi is an emirate.
الاردن ملكة.

Abu Dhabi is an emirate.
مصر جههورية.
الكويت دولة.
عمان سلطنة.
ابو ظي امارة.

## Part B

قسم ب
Amman is the capital of Jordan.
Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
عمّان هي عاصمة الأردن.

Tunis is the capital of Tunisia.
Kuwait City is the capital of Kuwait.
Muscat is the capital of Oman.
القاهرة هي عاصمة مصر .
تو نس هي عاصمة تو نس.
مدينة الكويت هي عاصمة الكويت. مسقط هي عاصمة عُمان.

## $\int$ vocabulary

المفردات
second
part
kingdom
republic
state
Oman
sultanate
Abu Dhabi


## مفردات اضافية

Libya
Sudan
Tripoli
Khartoum
Damascus
Beirut


Baghdad
بَغْداد
Riyadh
he


هُوْ
city
مَدينَة
what شو

## GRAMMAR NOTES

## I. Equational sentences

This lesson contains more equational sentences (sentences without an overt verb). All the sentences in the basic information section are equational.

> Jordan (is) a kingdom.
> الاردن ملكة.

Egypt (is) a republic.
مصر جمهورية.

These sentences (from Part A) all consist of the name of a country followed by a word identifying its political system. Both words are nouns. The first is definite, the second indefinite. Put together in this order, they make a sentence.

In Part B of the basic information section, the sentences are still equational, but with the difference that both parts (the topic and the comment) are definite, e.g., "Amman is the capital of Jordan." Because both parts are definite, the break between them is normally "marked" by the insertion of a pronoun that agrees in gender (either masculine or feminine) with the subject (or topic) of the sentence. In all of the sentences of part B, the subjects are feminine (they are names of cities, and all cities are considered feminine), so the pronoun used is "she"-هي. For a masculine subject the pronoun would be "he"-هو. This will come up in the following lesson.)

## II. Gender

All nouns in Arabic have inherent gender. They are either masculine or feminine. In general, feminine nouns end with an a sound and are spelled with a $t \bar{a}^{3}$ marbūṭa (0) at the end of the word.
republic capital عاصمهورية city ماينة

## III. The "construct" phrase (الاضافة)

The most common way of expressing a relationship between two things (especially possessive) in Arabic is by constructing the two nouns together by placing one after the other. The first noun is seen as being constructed or annexed to the second, so that expressions such as "the city of Beirut" or "the capital of Egypt" are literally, in Arabic, "city Beirut" and "capital Egypt."
the capital of Jordan $\quad$ the city of Cairo $\quad$ ماصينة القاهرة الاردن

Two basic rules about this kind of structure are:
a. The first term of the construct never has the definite article, but it is considered definite if it is followed by a definite noun.
b. If the first term is a feminine word ending in an $/-\mathrm{a} /$ sound and spelled with a final $t \bar{a}^{\overrightarrow{ }}$ marbūta (0), /-t/ is pronounced after the vowel.

DRILL I: COMPREHENSION

Listen to the following questions and answers and write in English the names of the capitals and countries in the order they are mentioned.
استمع الى الاسئلة والا جوبة التالية وا كتب بالابخليزية أسماء العواصم
والبلدان حسب ترتيب ذكرها.

## 1. بيروت


2. الرياض $\qquad$

1. شو عاصمة لبنان؟
Y. شو عاصمة السعودية؟
2. الخرطوم $\qquad$
3. طرابلس

4. 5 بغداد $\qquad$ $-$
5. 6 $\qquad$ r. شو عاصمة السودان؟ ₹ . شو عاصمة ليبيا؟

○. شو عاصمة العراق؟ Y. شو عاصمة سوريا؟

## DRILL 2: COMPLETION

Fill in the blanks by writing in the letter of the appropriate country from the left-hand column.


## DRILL 3: SORTING OUT

Listen to the following sentences on the CD and classify them by political system by writing the number of each sentence under the appropriate heading.
استمع الل ابلمل التالية ورتب البلدان حسب انظتهم السباسية بان تكتب رقم كل جمة في العهود المناسب.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {, V الارددن ملكة. } \\
& \text { 1. السودان جمهورية. } \\
& \text { ا. الـرصر جهورية. } \\
& \text { r. r. العراق جهورية. } \\
& \text { 9. عمان سلطنة. } \\
& \text { r.r السعودية ملـكة. } \\
& \text { •1 ال تونس جمهورية. } \\
& \text { 11. ال ابو ظي امارة. } \\
& \text { rir ا المغرب ميكة. } \\
& \text { ع. لبنان جمهورية. } \\
& \text { ه . الكويت دولة. } \\
& \text { 7. } 1 \text {. سوريا جهورية }
\end{aligned}
$$



## So drill atrue or false

التمرين الرابع: صح ام خطاً

Listen and respond yes or no to the following statements:
استمع الى الجمل التالية واحب بنعم او لا:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 0. مصر جمهورية. } \\
& \text { 7. لبنان جهورية. } \\
& \text { V. ابو ظبي دولة. } \\
& \text { 1. . السعودية ملبكة. }
\end{aligned}
$$

1. الاردن سلطنة.
r r. السودان جمهورية.
r r. العرات علبكة.
عـ ـ. الكويت امارة.

## DRILL 5: COMPLETION

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate letter referring to the political system and the number referring to the respective country.
املأُ الفر اغين في كل جملة بالحرف والرقم المناسبين.

Example
بيروت عاصمة
أ. السمورية
ب. r r بُكة
ج r. السعودية
د. د. العراق
م م المارة الاردن

$$
7 \text {. سوريا }
$$

V. تونس

1. مصر
2. الكويت

$$
\text { - } 1 \text { لبنان }
$$

ا . عمان عاصهة
r. دمشیق عاصدة
r. بغداد عاصمة §. الكويت عاصمة

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 9. صوريا جمهورية. } \\
& \text { • } 1 \text {. المير كا ملكة. } \\
& 11 \\
& \text { r r r r r r r الار الاسد ملك. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { £ ا. ا. سوريا صراطنة. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { •1 } 1 \text { ا ابو ظبي عاصمة تونس. } \\
& 17 \\
& \text {. IV }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 19. } 19 \\
& \text {. Y. }
\end{aligned}
$$



DRILL 6: MEANINGFUL USE
التمرين السادس: التطبيق
a. Mark down the number of the following capital cities in the correct places on the map.

أ. اكتب ارقام العواصم التالية في الاماكن الصحـحة على النارطة.

| 7. 7 الخرا طوم | 1. الر الر |
| :---: | :---: |
| V | Y. Y. القاهرة |
| 1 . | r |
| 9 9 | ع . تونس |
| . 1. | 0. بيروت |

دول الوطن العربي

b. Mark the countries on the map with the letter that corresponds to their political system.


1 1
r r با بهورية
r
ع ع ع المارة
م م سلطنة

## TASK I

Listen to the dialogue and estimate how often the following words occur:
سلطنة
امارة
دولة
جمهورية
ملاكة

TASK 2
Listen to the news bulletin on the CD. After you have heard it a couple of times, try to write down in English any names of countries, rulers, capitals, or political systems that you can identify.

| Countries | Rulers | Capitals | Political systems |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |  |

## LESSON THREE <br> 

## Official Titles

## OVERVIEW

In this lesson you will be introduced to the official titles of heads of state of Arab countries (king, president, sultan, prince, sheikh), a few more names of heads of states, and some new grammatical features. The structure of the lesson remains the same, with a matrix dialogue, basic information, drills, meaningful use exercises and tasks. You are still to focus only on the shapes and sounds of words and how they are strung together in sentences. You are not expected to be able to pronounce them out loud or write them yet, but you are expected to be able to manipulate this material in various ways, as instructed in the drills, exercises, and tasks.

## $\delta_{\text {matrix dialogue }}$

Listen to the dialogue as instructed in the Student's Notes. Then, discuss it with your teacher.

## GRAMMAR POINTS

I. فيه and
II. Equational sentences
III. The construct phrase
IV. Noun plurals

## $\int$ BASIC INFORMATION

## المعلومات الاساسية

## Part A

قسم أ
There is a king in Jordan.
في الاردن ملك.
في الاردن فيه ملك.
في لبنان رئيس.
في لبنان فيه رئيس.
في عمان سلطان.
في عمان فيه سلطان.
في الكويت امير.
في الكويت فيه امير.

There is a president in Lebanon.

There is a sultan in Oman.

There is a prince in Kuwait.

There is a sheikh in Abu Dhabi.
في ابو ظي شيخ. في ابو ظي فيه شيخ.

## Part B

King Abdallah is the king of Jordan.
Mr. Emile Lahud is the president of الملك عبد الله هو ملك الاردن. السيد اميل لـود هو رئيس لبنان. Lebanon.
Sultan Qaboos is the sultan of Oman.
Prince Jabir Al-Ahmad is the prince of
السلطان قابوس هو سلطان عمان. الامير. جابر الاحمد هو امير الكويت. Kuwait.

Sheikh Ibn Zayid bin Sultan is the sheikh of Abu Dhabi.
الشيخ ابن زايد بن سلطان هو شيخ

## Part C

King Abdallah is the king of the kingdom of Jordan.

Mr. Emile Lahud is the president of the republic of Lebanon.
Sultan Qaboos is the sultan of the sultanate of Oman.

Prince Jabir Al-Ahmad is the prince of the state of Kuwait.

Ibn Sheikh Zayid bin Sultan is the sheikh of the emirate of Abu Dhabi.

## قسم ج

الملك عبد الله هو ملك ملكة الاردن.

السيد اميل لحود هو رئيس جمهورية
لبنان.
السلطان قابوس هو سلطان سلطنة عمان.

الامير جابر الاحمد هو امير دولة الكو يت.
الشيخ ابن زايد بن سلطان هو شيخ امارة ابو ظبي.

## $\delta$ vocabulary



## SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

picture (pictures)
please (m.), please (f.) give me (imperative)
(both m. and f.)

take (imperative)(m. / f.) خُخْ / خُذي خُذْ / خُخْي point (to), show map

## مفردات اضافية

 (خارطات، خَرَائط)
I. Use of and فيه
A. is a preposition meaning "in" or "at"

Beirut is in Lebanon. بيروت في لبنان.
The king is in the capital.
الملك في العاصـة.
B. . is an adverb meaning "there is" or "there are"

In Jordan there is a king.
There is a president in Syria.
Is there, in Egypt, a president?

فيه فيه الاردن فيه ميكر ميك رئيس.

Although these two words sound very much alike, the vowel of is is often shortened in norinal speech, whereas the vowel of فيه stays long.

## II. Equational sentences

All of the sentences in the basic information part of this lesson are equational. In part A, the sentences are of two types:

In Kuwait is a prince.
في الكويت امير.

In Kuwait there is a prince.
في الكويت فيه امير.

These two sentence types are equivalent in meaning and both types are common in spoken Arabic.

In this kind of equational sentence, the "topic" or "subject" is the last word and the "comment" or "predicate" is the first phrase, e.g., ين الكويت"in Kuwait." The prepositional phrase comes first in these sentences because the topic or subject is indefinite. That is, the topic noun does not have the definite article nor is it the first term of a construct. There is a general rule in Arabic that if the subject of an equational sentence is indefinite, it cannot start the sentence. Thus, if one says, "The prince is in Kuwait," the Arabic equivalent would be: الامير في الكويت. But if one is speaking about a prince in Kuwait, the Arabic sentence has to start with "in Kuwait:" في الكويت امير.

English has a similar rule, only one avoids sentences, such as, "A prince is in Kuwait," by prefacing "there is" to the indefinite subject, and making, "There is a prince in Kuwait."

In Parts $B$ and $C$ of the basic information section, the equational sentences are of the type where both parts (subject and predicate) are definite, so they are separated by a pronoun (in this case هو "he").

## III. The construct phrase

In Lesson 2 you learned about the "construct" phrase, where two nouns are related to each other by being placed next to each other.

In this lesson in the exercises that deal with using pictures, there is a construct phrase consisting of the word "picture" (صورة) plus a name of a person, meaning "the picture of $\qquad$ ."

## Examples

the picture of Husni Mubarak
the capital of the Sudan
the city of Cairo


In addition to these simple constructs, you are introduced to a "complex" construct, consisting of three nouns, as seen in Part C.

## King Abdallah is the king of the kingdom of Jordan. <br> الملك عبد الله ملك ملكة الاردن.

So, where English uses "of" to link these nouns together, Arabic "constructs" the nouns together in a string. It is possible (though not too common) to construct a whole string of nouns together. For example:
the brother of the wife of the king of
اخو زوجة ملك ملكة الاردن the kingdom of Jordan

In general, wherever English links nouns together with "of" or the possessive "'s" ("Husni Mubarak's picture," "Jordan's king"), the equivalent s̊tructure in Arabic is the construct.

A basic rule for the construct (no matter how many terms or nouns it has) is: Only the last noun in the string can have the definite article.

## IV. Noun plurals

There are several nouns in the vocabulary of this lesson followed, in parentheses, by their plural forms. As you can see and hear, the plural differs substantially from the singular. It contains the same consonants, but the vowels are differently distributed. This kind of plural is called the "internal" or "broken" plural, and is a feature of many Arabic nouns and adjectives.

## DRILL I: COMPLETION

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate letter from the opposite column.

| أ. رئيس لبنان | ا. الرئيس حسي مبارك هو |
| :---: | :---: |
| ب. ملك السعودية | r. النّيخ جابر الإمد هو |
| ج. سمطان عمان | r.r. الامير عبد اللّ هو |
| د. مـك الاردن | ع. الرئيس اميل لود هو |
| 0. امير الكويت | o. الملك عبد الهِ هو |
| 9. رئيس مصر | 7. الرئيس بشار الاسد هو |
| ز. رئيس سوريا | الd. .V |

## DRILL 2: MATCHING

Match the questions with the right answer.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ضع حرف البواب المناسب امام السؤال المناسب. } \\
& \text { ا. مين ريئس جمهورية مصر؟ } \\
& \text { ب. الرئيس حسين مبارك } \\
& \text { ج. الثيخ ابن زايد بن سلطان }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Y. r. مين ريئس ملك ملك ملكة السعو دية؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { م. مين ريئس جمهورية لبنان؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 3: COMPLETION

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate letter for the title of the head of state and the number for the system of government.

املكُ الفراغين في كل جملة بالحرف والرقم المناسبين.



DRILL 4:TRUE OR FALSE
التمرين الرابع: صح اوخطأ
Listen and respond yes or no to the following statements.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { استمع عٌ اجب بنعم أو لا عن البمل التالية. } \\
& \text { ا. رئيس جمهورية لبنان هو اميل لـود }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r. أمير إمارة أبو ظبي هو الشيخ ابن زايد بن بـن سلطان. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ع. ملك علكة الاردن هو الأمير عبد اللّ. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 7. الميردولة الكويت هو الثـيخ جابر الاجمد. } \\
& \text { V V. رئيس جمهورية سوريا هو السيد اميل لـودو. } \\
& \text { 1. . . ملك السعودية هو الملك عبد الله. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 5: COMPLETION

Fill in the blanks with the number that corresponds to the name of the appropriate capital city.
اماكُ الفراغ برقم العاصمة المناسبة.


## DRILL 6：COMPLETION

Fill in the blanks with the letter that corresponds to the correct title of the head of state．


## So drill 7 ：TRUE or false

Listen and respond yes or no to the following statements．

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { اصغ ثم اجب بنعم او لا. } \\
& \text { 7. فيه رئيس في الإمارات العربية؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ^. . فيه ملك في السودان؟ } \\
& \text { 9. هيه سلطان في عمان؟ } \\
& \text { • } 1 \text {. فيه شيخ في تونس؟ } \\
& \text { ا. فـيه ملك في مصر؟؟ } \\
& \text { 「. 「. فيه رئسِ في العراق؟ } \\
& \text { r. } \\
& \text { ع. فـيه سلطان في لبنان؟ } \\
& \text { ○ . فيه رئيس في العراق؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

Put the number of the correct ruler's name on the appropriate spot on the map.
ضع كل رقم في مكانه المناسب على الخارطة.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { • • الرئيس حسين مبارك! } \\
& \text { 7. الساطان قابوس } \\
& \text {. V الرئيس بشار الأسد الاند } \\
& \text { 1. الثـخ جابر الاخمد } \\
& \text { ا. الأمير عبد الله بن عبد العزيز }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r. r. الرئيس إياد العلاوي } \\
& \text { ₹. اللك عبد الله }
\end{aligned}
$$

دول الوطن العربي


## DRILL 9: MEANINGFUL USE

In this exercise your teacher will ask you for pictures of Arab leaders. Respond to your teacher's request.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { تَاوب بع المدرّ حــب الطلوب: } \\
& \text { ا. من فضلك اعطيني صورة الرئيس إياد العلاوي. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r. r. من فضلك اعطيني صورة الرئيس اميل لـو }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ع. من فضلك اعطيني صورة الرئيس حسين مبارك. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {.V . . . . }
\end{aligned}
$$

Using the same pictures, respond to your teacher's request. This time, the teacher will use the verb "take."

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { بتاوب مع المبرس مدتعملا بمهوعة الصورنفسها. } \\
& \text { ا. هن فضلك نح صورة الرئيس حسي مبارك. } \\
& \text { r. r. من فضلك خـل صورة الشيخ جابر الاحمد. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ع. من فضلك حخ صورة الملك عبد الله. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 7. من فضلك خن الـ صورة الرئيس بشار الأسد. } \\
& \text { V. . من فضلك خن صورة الرئيس إياد العلاوي. }
\end{aligned}
$$

In this drill your professor will ask you where certain pictures are. Respond by pointing to the correct one.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { استحب لطلب الأستاذ حين يطلب منك ان تدل باصبعك على صور بعض الزعماء. } \\
& \text { وين الشنيخ جابر الاحمد؟ } \\
& \text { وين الساطان قابوس؟ } \\
& \text { وين السيد محمود عباس أبو مازن؟ } \\
& \text { وين الرئيس بوش؟ } \\
& \text { وين الرئيس اميل لويسب؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

## A WORD ABOUTTASKS

In these lessons we take you from unrestricted and authentic Arabic (the matrix dialogue) to Arabic which is informative but highly simplified (the basic information section), so as to familiarize you with some rudiments of the language itself (the drills). Then we begin (meaningful use) to bring you back from that heavy concentration on linguistic form. We want to end the lessons by putting you back in contact with the Arabic you will meet in the Arab world.

In these task activities you play the role of U.S. government employee or dependent who is listening to a newscast or to Arabs talking to each other. You are trying to get as much information as possible out of the conversation or the broadcast, even though your knowledge of the language is limited. In the first two lessons, we asked you to listen for specific things in the tasks: names, places, and systems of government. In the following task, listen to the newscast and try to see how many familiar items you can identify, both by listening and then by looking at the text. Compare notes with your classmates, but don't bother trying to figure out any more of the broadcast.

This activity will probably take $20-25$ minutes. Notice that we are now back to a fairly even balance among C1, C2, and C3, as discussed in the Student's Notes section of the introduction.

## TASK

In this task you have a news broadcast on the CD and a copy of the Arabic text of the broadcast to look at. Listen to the CD with your teacher at least a couple of times without trying to follow the written text. When you feel ready, listen and try to follow along while reading. When you come across a word in the text that is familiar, underline it. Then listen once again. Your teacher will go over this material in class. Check your underlinings with the teacher:

ا. دعا العر اق إلى عقد مؤتمر قمة في مدينة بغداد لبحث الأوضاع الع العربية الر اهنة. وجاءت الدعوة في حديث أدلى به أسس الرئيس إياد علاو يـ الما
Y. أعلن السيد عمرو موسى أمين عام الجامعة العربية مساء أمس موافقّة ابلجامعة العربية على دعوة العراق لعقد مؤتمر قمة في بغداد.

 ع. صرح العقيد القذافي بأنه لن يذه إلى إلى بغداد لـضور مؤتمر القمة العربي وأن لا لا أحد سوف

ه. أعلن أمين عام البامعة العر بية أنه علم من مصادر مططعة أن تونس توافق على حضور مؤتمر


 الدعوة قريباً.

## LESSON FOUR



## Geography

## OVERVIEW

This lesson deals with geography. In it you will be able to work with maps, directions, and place names. You will also be introduced to the names of major land forms and bodies of water, especially those located in the Arab world. You are still required only to try to recognize the written words by looking at them and by hearing them pronounced on the CD and by your teacher.

It may seem that there is much more vocabulary in this lesson than in previous ones, but most of the new words are names of places and things that you already know.

## $\delta$ matrix dialogue

Listen to the matrix dialogue and then discuss it with your teacher.

## GRAMMAR POINTS

I. Adjectives
II. Nisba adjectives
III. Place names
IV. Possessive pronouns "his" and "hers"

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { درس في الجغرافية } \\
& \text { في العا لم العربي بحار وخلةجان وأهار ووديان وصحاري وجزائر وجبال. مثالا: المليج العربي يقع في } \\
& \text { شرق شبه الجزيرة العربية وخليج العقبة هو جنوب الأردن. البحرالأبيض هو بين شمال أفريقيا } \\
& \text { وأوروبا والبحر الأحمر بين مصر والسعودية. قناة السويس، في مصر، تربط البر البحر الأبيض بالبحر } \\
& \text { الأممر. البحر العربي هو جنوب شرق شـر شبه الجز يرة العر بية وبين البحر العربي والمليج العربي فيه } \\
& \text { مضيق هرمز وخليج عمان. }
\end{aligned}
$$

الأردن في الأردن. وادي النيل ووادي الملوك في مصر.
الصحاري في العالم العربي تشمل صحراء سيناء في مصر وصحراء النفود في السعودية
والصحر اء الكبراى في أفريقيا الشمالية. العالم العربي معروف بصحارياريه الكثيرة. ومن بين الجزائر في
العالم العربي جزيرة البحرين في الخليج العربي وجزيرة السمها مصيرة في البحر العربي وجزير
في خليج عدن.
في لبنان جبال كثيرة، من بينها جبل مشهور اسمه جبل الشيخ. وفي السعودية فيه كمان جبل
مشهور اسمه جبل عرفات. وبين الخيط الأطلمي والبحر الأبيض جبل مشهور اسمه بالعربي جبل طارق.

English version
الترجمة الانبحليزية

## A Lesson in Geography

There are seas, gulfs, rivers, valleys, deserts, islands, and mountains in the Arab world. For example, the Arabian Gulf is east of the Arabian Peninsula and the Gulf of Aqaba is south of Jordan. The Mediterranean Sea is between North Africa and Europe, and the Red Sea is between Egypt and Saudi Arabia. The Suez Canal, in Egypt, links the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea. The Arabian Sea is southeast of the Arabian Peninsula, and between the Arabian Sea and the Arabian Gulf are the Straits of Hormuz and the Gulf of Oman.

As for rivers and valleys, there is the Nile River in the Sudan and Egypt, the Euphrates River in Syria and Iraq, and the Jordan River in Jordan. The Nile Valley and the Valley of the Kings are in Egypt.

The deserts of the Arab world include the Sinai Desert in Egypt, the Nafud Desert in Saudi Arabia, and the Sahara in North Africa. The Arab world is known for its many deserts.

Among the islands in the Arab world are the island of Bahrain in the Arabian Gulf, an island named Masira in the Arabian Sea, and the island of Socotra in the Gulf of Aden.

There are many mountains in Lebanon, among which is a famous one named Mt. Hermon. In western Saudi Arabia is another famous mountain named Mt. Arafat, and between the Atlantic Ocean and the Mediterranean is a famous mountain called jabal ṭāriq (Gibraltar).

| $\int$ vocabulary |  |  | المفردات |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| fourth | رابع | the Euphrates River | نَهْر الْفُرات |
| geography | جُغْرِ إِفِّة | the Jordan River | نَهْر الأرْدْنِ |
| world | عاكِّم (عَوْمِّم) | include(s) | تَشْمْلِ |
| Arab; Arabic | عَرْبِ (عَرْب) | Sinai | سيناء |
| sea | بَحْر (بحار) | the Nafud | النَّفود |
| gulf | خَليِج (خُلْجان) | the Sahara ("the Great | الصَّحْرْ |
| river | نَهْرْ (أَنْهار) | Desert") | الحبى |
| wadi, valley | وادي (ودِيان) | northern | شِمالي |
| desert (f.) | صَخْراء (صَارياري) | its deserts | صَحاريه |
| island | جَزيرة (جَز ايرِّر، جُزِّر) | known for, as | مَعْروف (-ين) |
| mountain | جَبَلِ (جبال) | many, much | كثير (كثّار) |
| for example | مَثّا | among | هِنْ بْبْنِ |
| east | شَرْقٌ | Bahrain | الْبَحْرَّنْ |
| peninsula | شثبْبْهِ جَزيرَهِ | name | إسْم (أسْماء) |
| Aqaba | الْحَقْبَ | her (its) name | إِّه8ها |
| south | جَنوب | Masira | مُصيرِّ |
| white | أَبِّض | Socotra | سُقِّرْة |
| the Mediterranean | الْبَحْرْ الأبِّيْ | Aden | عَدَن |
| Sea | (الْمُتوسِّطِّ | among them | هِنْ بَنْها |
| between; among | بَبْن | famous | مَشْهْور (-ين) |
| north | شِمال | his (its) name | إِمُه |
| Africa | إفريقيا | Mt. Hermon | جبَبل الشَّنْ |
| Europe | أوروبا | western | غُرْبِ |

red
canal
Suez
she (it) links
straits
Hormuz
as for
the Nile River

| أَحْمْرَ | also, too | كَمان |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| قَناة (قَنوات) | Mt. Arafat | جَبَل عَرَفات |
| آلسويّس | ocean | مُحيط (-ات) |
| تَرْبط ب | the Atlantic Ocean | الْهحـط الأَطْلْ |
| مُضِيق | in; at; by | ب |
| هُرْمْ | in Arabic | بالعربي |
| امّا | Gibraltar | جبَّل طارق |

## GRAMMAR NOTES

## I. Adjectives

In this lesson you are introduced to adjectives and noun-adjective phrases. Unlike nouns, adjectives do not have inherent gender. They are flexible, and change to reflect the gender of the noun they are with. Adjectives are said to "modify" or describe nouns. In Arabic, the adjectives have to agree with whatever nouns they modify in gender (masculine or feminine), number (singular or plural), and definiteness (definite or indefinite).

For example, here are some noun-adjective phrases, both masculine and feminine, definite and indefinite (singular):

| Masculine indefinite | مذكر نكرة |
| :---: | :---: |
| a famous river | هر مشهور |
| a northern sea | بحر شمالي |
| an Arab name | اسمّ عربي |
| Feminine indefinite | مؤنث نكرة |
| a famous island | جزيرة مشهورة |
| a northern desert | صحراء شريمالية |
| an Arab city | مدينة عربية |

Masculine definite
مذكر معرفة
the famous river النهر الشهور الشمالي
الشمر العربي

| Feminine definite | المؤنث معر فة المرية المشورة الشمالية العربة |
| :---: | :--- |

Adjectives modifying nonhuman plural nouns are feminine singular.

## II. Nisba adjectives

There are two basic types of adjectives in Arabic. One is inherently an adjective (such as كبير "large") and the other is a "derived" type of adjective. That is, it is made into an adjective from a noun (such as "northern"-derived from the noun "north").

The process of forming an adjective from a noun in Arabic involves adding a $y \bar{a}^{\overrightarrow{ }}$ (ي) to the end of the word, which gives it an $i$ sound on the end.

| north | شِمال | northern | شِماليّ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| south | جنوب | southern | جَنوبيّ |
| east | شَرْقٌ | eastern | شَرْقِيّ |
| west | غَرْب | western | غَرْبيّ |

The $-i-$ sound is actually a "double" ي, that is, ي with a shadda (") on it. This shadda is not generally pronounced in spoken Arabic. The feminine form of the above adjectives is written with a $t \bar{a}^{\circ}$ marbūta ( $\overline{0}$ ) at the end, after the N . In the feminine form, the shadda on the s is heard, so that these words end with the sound -iyya.

|  | Feminine adjective |
| :---: | :---: |
| northern | شبمالِّة |
| southern | جَنوبيّة |

Adjectives that are derived in this way from nouns are called nisba adjectives.

## III. Place names

There are many place names in this lesson. Some of them are structured as nounadjective phrases and others are construct phrases.

```
Construct phrases Noun-adjective phrases
```

 وادي النيل البحر الأحمر


الصحر اء الغر بية

Noun-adjective phrases
الخليج العربي
اليمط الأطلـي
قناة السويس
جز يرة البحرين
جبل الشيخ

## IV. Possessive pronouns "his" and "her"

Just as in English, Arabic has possessive pronouns as well as subject pronouns. You have already seen "he" and "she." In this lesson you have "his" and "her."

The distinctive thing about possessive pronouns in Arabic is that they are suffixes. That is, they are attached at the end of the word. It's like saying in English: "name-his" instead of "his name." Here are some examples:

| English | Arabic |
| :---: | :---: |
| his name | السمه |
| her name | اسمها |
| his lesson | درسه |
| her lesson | درسها |
| his picture | صورته |
| her picture | صورفّا |

## DRILL I: CLASSIFICATION

التمرين الأول: تصنيف

Put the numbers of the following words in the appropriate column:
ضع رقم كل من الكلمات التالية في العمود المناسب:


## DRILL 2: COMPLETION

Put the letter of the appropriate word in the blank.
املأ الفراغ بكرف الكلمة المناسبة:


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { و. الخليج العربي } \\
& \text { ز. البحر العربي } \\
& \text { ح. السودان } \\
& \text { ط. العراق } \\
& \text { ي. سوريا }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { - جزيرة البحرين . V }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 9. فـ الفرات في } \\
& \text {, } \\
& \text {. . مضيق هرمز بين }
\end{aligned}
$$

Fill in the blank with the letter that corresponds to the appropriate word.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { املأ الفراغ بكرف الكلدة المناسبة: } \\
& \text { أ.أفريقيا بـ ب. آسيا }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { - T. جبل سيناء } \\
& \text { r.r خليج العقبة في } \\
& \text { ع. جبل الثيخ في }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 7. النيل في } \\
& \text { - مضيق هرمز في .V }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 9. عمان في } \\
& \text { - ا. جبل طارق في . }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Sodrill 4:true or false

التمرين الرابع صح: أم خطأ

Answer yes or no to the following statements:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أجب عن الجمل التالية بنعم او لا } \\
& \text { ا ـ جز يرة مصيرة في الـنليج العربي. } \\
& \text { r. جبل طارق في افريقيا. } \\
& \text { r. } \\
& \text { ع. غر الأردن في لبنان. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 7. صحر اء النفود في افريقيا. } \\
& \text { V. V البحر الأمر بين مصر والصعودية. } \\
& \text { 1. . مضيق هرمز بين صحر اء سيناء والـعودية. } \\
& \text { 9. } \\
& \text { • ا. بين امريكا واوربا الهيط الاطلــــي }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r r r r r r r r } \\
& \text { I r } \\
& \text { ع ا . ال القاهرة في الصحراء دوبة. } \\
& \text { ا } 1 \text {. تونس مدينة. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Complete the following phrases by putting the correct letter in the blank:



## DRILL 6: COMPLETION

التمرين السادس: تكميل

Fill in the blanks by writing the letter that corresponds to the correct direction.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { املأ الفراغ برف البهية المناسبة. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { عمان. }
\end{aligned}
$$

DRILL 7: COMPLETION

Fill in the blank with the letter that corresponds to the appropriate phrase.

Put the number of the matching English phrase in the appropriate blank.
املأ الفراغ برقم العبارة الانكليزية الملائمة.

1. the western world $\qquad$
النهر الجنوبي
2. the northern canal $\qquad$
العا لم الغربي
3. an Arab capital $\qquad$
مدينة شرقية
4. the southern river $\qquad$
البحر الشمالي
5. a southern ocean $\square$
الجز يرة الشرقية
6. the eastern island $\qquad$
عاصمة عربية

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { امأك الفراغ بحرف الكلمة المناسبة. } \\
& \text { أ. المه ب. اسمها }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { صحراء النفود. } \\
& \text { 「. Y. ين السعودية صحراء مشهورة } \\
& \text { r. } \\
& \text { دمشق. } \\
& \text { ع. في سوريا مدينة مشهورة }
\end{aligned}
$$

V. V. في جنوب أوروبا جبل حشهور _ـ_ جبل طارق.
7. the North Sea
-
8. an eastern city $\qquad$ القناة النئمالية

## $\delta_{\text {task }}$

Listen to the task dialogue a couple of times for familiar words. Then see how many times you hear the following words and mark them down. Then listen to the dialogue while following along with the written text. Compare your results with your classmates and discuss them with your teacher.


صحيح، درسنا عن منطقة المليج وشبه البزيرة العر بية وشمال افريقيا: يعي المنطقة اللي في
آسيا والمنطقة اللي في افريقيا من العالم العربي.
$\qquad$
اذن أكيد درستوا أنَ البحرين جزيرة، ودر ستوا عن صحراء النفود؟
$\qquad$
نعم، ودر سنا عن صحراء الربع النالي وصحراء سيناء كمان.
$\qquad$
درستوا عن مصر كمان؟

طبعا، عن فر النيل وعن قناة السويس اللي تربط البحر الأبيض بالبحر الأممر. ما فيه غير فر النيل في العالم العربي؟

لا . . . كيف ما فيه غير النيل! فيه أفكار غيره . . . فيه فر الفرات وفهر الأردن وأفار
أخرى كثيرة.
والخلجان والضضايق اللي في العالم العربي درستوا عنها شيء؟ $\qquad$
نعم، درسنا عن الخليج شرق البزيرة العربية، ومضيق هرمز بين الثليج وب大ر العرب. $\qquad$ شو علاقة الحيط الأطلمي بالعا مل العربي؟ $\qquad$ الخيط الأطلـي يقع غرب العالم العربي، بينما الملـيج يقع في الشرق. $\qquad$ العالم العربي مشهور بكبال كثيرة، عن أي جبل درستوا؟ $\qquad$
 $\qquad$
في أوروبا، اسمه جبل طارق.
درستوا عن الوديان كمان؟ $\qquad$
نعم، خصوصاً عن وادي النيل. $\qquad$
هنا شيء متع جدلًا شكراً جزيلاً. $\qquad$
أهلا وسهجا $\qquad$

## LESSON FIVE



## Systems of Government

## OVERVIEW

In this lesson you are introduced to plural forms of nouns, more noun-adjective phrases and construct phrases, as well as two verbs and the negative particle mish. You will be asked to use your knowledge of Arabic numbers for the meaningful use part of the lesson.

As in the previous four lessons, you are asked to try to understand the Arabic words and sentences that you see and hear, but you are not expected to produce these words in spoken or written forms yet.

After this lesson will come two review lessons that will go over the material covered in the first five lessons and add more names of people and places. In these review lessons you will be expected to do some writing and speaking in Arabic.

## $\int$ matrix dialogue

Listen to the matrix dialogue on the CD and then discuss it with your teacher.

## GRAMMAR POINTS

I. Nisba adjectives
II. Noun and adjective plurals
III. Word order
IV. Verbs كان and صار; citation forms
V. Negation: use of

## BASIC INFORMATION

في العا لم العربي مُالك وجمهوريات ودول وامارات. مصر جمهورية. كان اسمها الرسمي في وقت
 من بين الممالك العر بية السعودية والأردن. اسم السعودية الرسمي هو المملكة العربية الـمية السعودية لأن العائلة الحاكمة هي بيت ابن سعود. واسم الأردن الرسمي هو المـلمكة الأردنية الماثمية، لأن المك عبد الله هاشمي، من العائلة الهاشمية. زو جة اللك مش من من الأردن. هي فلسيطينية من الكويت واسمها رانيا وصارت أردنية.

English version

There are kingdoms, republics, states, and emirates in the Arab world. Egypt is a republic. Its official name during the time of the government of Gamal Adbul Nasser was the United Arab Republic. Then its name became the Arab Republic of Egypt.

Among the Arab kingdoms are Saudi Arabia and Jordan. The official name of Saudi Arabia is the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia (the Saudi Arabian Kingdom), because the ruling family is of the House of Ibn Saud. The official name of Jordan is the Hashemite Kingdom of Jordan (the Hashemite Jordanian Kingdom), because King Abdallah is a Hashemite, from the Hashemite family. King Abdallah is Jordanian but the wife of the king is not from Jordan. She is a Palestinian from Kuwait and her name is Rania and she has become Jordanian.

## 8 vocabulary

fifth
kingdom
 جُمْهوريَّة (جُمْهورِيَّات) دَوْلَة (دُوَلَ)
emirate
he (it) was
official (adjective)
time; era
government
united
United Arab
Republic
later, after that, then
he (it) became
the Arab Republic
of Egypt
because
family
ruling, governing,
house
son
Saud
بَبْت (بُبيوت)
كَان
 إْبن (أَبْناء)

Hashemite
but, however
هاشِيمي
wife
Kuwait
not

that is, meaning
the United States
state (U.S.); province
she, it was
لأَنَ
عائِلَة (عائِلات)
حاكِم (-ين)
queen
Palestinian (f.)
she, it became


زَوْجْةَ (-ات)


هِشْ


ولايَة (-ات)
كانَت
 in power

## So supplementary vocabulary

masculine
feminine

indefinite
definite
why

مفردات اضافية

## in

لَيْش

## GRAMMAR NOTES

## I. Nisba adjectives

In the previous lesson it was noted that adjectives can be formed from nouns by adding the suffix ي". The nouns used to illustrate this process were names of directions, but the nisba can be used on any noun to create an adjective. For example:

| main, chief | رئيسي | رئيس | president |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| royal | ركي | ملك | king |
| Håshemite | هالمي | هاشمـ | Hashem |

Certain proper nouns, especially names of places, must be "stripped" before the ي is added. The definite article $t \bar{a}^{\top}$ marbu$t \underset{a}{ }$ and final alif are things that must be removed to create the nisba adjective:

| Cairene | قاهري | القاهرة | Cairo |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Iraqi | عراقي | العر اق | Iraq |
| American | أمريكي | أمريكا | America |
| Saudi | سعودي | السعوردية | Saudi Arabia |
| Palestinian | فلــطيني | فلسطين | Palestine |
| Libyan | ليبيا | ليبي | Libya |

## II. Noun and adjective plurals

As noted in Lesson 3, many nouns and adjectives have "broken" or "internal" plurals. In addition to the broken plural, however, there are also "sound" or "regular" plurals that take the form of suffixes.

## A. The sound masculine plural

This form of plural is used on certain masculine nouns and adjectives and consists of the suffix ين-:

B. The sound feminine plural

Many feminine nouns take the sound feminine plural (ات), as well as all adjectives that refer to female human beings. (Note that it replaces the $t \bar{a}^{\prime}$ marbūta.) Even certain masculine nouns are made plural with ات

| Plural | Singular noun (f.) |  |
| :---: | ---: | :--- |
| عمهورياتلات | عمائلة | republic |
| family |  |  |


| Plural | Singular adjective (f.) |
| :---: | ---: |
| أردنيات | Jordanian |
| مشهورة | famous |

## Plural Singular noun (m.)

عحيطات ocean

Knowing which kind of plural a noun or adjective uses is not easy to predict. For now, it is best to memorize the plural forms along with the singular. From this lesson on, plurals will be indicated in parentheses after a noun or adjective. The sound masculine plural will be noted as (ين), and the sound feminine plural as (ات). Adjectives will be cited in the shortest form, the masculine singular.

## III. Word order

As you have seen, Arabic adjectives follow the noun they modify. That is, one says in Arabic "the sea the red" البحر الأمر instead of "the Red Sea," or "a president famous" رئيس مشهور instead of "a famous president." This applies to all nouns unless they are the first term of a construct phrase.

One of the rules about construct phrases is that they consist only of nouns. Adjectives do not interrupt the "linking" of nouns together in the construct phrase. This means that (as in the basic information section of this lesson) when there is a phrase such as, "the official name of Jordan," one does not say something like "the name the official of Jordan." One has to say (literally) "the name of Jordan the official" اسم الأردن الرسمي. That is, the adjective comes only after the noun construct phrase has finished. In this example, "the name of Jordan" الاسم الأردن is the two-noun construct and "the official" الرسمي has to follow after the construct.

## IV. Verbs كان and citation forms

Two verbs are introduced in the basic information section of this lesson. You have learned that Arabic generally doesn't use a verb "to be" in the present tense. But there is a verb that means "to be" and it is used in the past tense. The verb is كان.

Arabic verbs lack an infinitive form, such as "to eat," "to walk," "to study," "to be." When referring to an Arabic verb or listing to an Arabic verb in the vocabulary, the convention is to use the third person masculine singular past tense form as the citation form. Thus, the verb form كان means (literally) "he was." It is also, however, the citation form of the verb (the way it would be listed in a glossary or dictionary).

The other verb in this lesson is صار "he became" or "to become." The masculine singular and feminine singular third person forms of the past tense are as follows:


## V. Negation: Use of مش

The word شش is used to negate equational sentences. For example:

He is not from Egypt.
هو مش من مصر.

She is not Lebanese.
هي مش لبنانية.

Jordan is not a republic.
الأردن مش جمهودية.

DRILL I: COMPLETION

Fill in the blank with the letter of the appropriate word.
املأُ الفراغ بشرف الڭلمة المناسبة.

ج. أمريكي

- r.
 7. الأمير عبد الله

ز. كويتي
ح. سوري

Write the appropriate letter in the blank.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { املأ الفراغ بالِرف المناسب. } \\
& \text { ب } \\
& \text { السورية. } 1 \\
& \text { r الأردنية. } \\
& \text { الكويتـة } \\
& \text { ع العراقية. } \\
& \text { - . } 0 \\
& \text { الـ } 7 \\
& \text { اللبنانية. V }
\end{aligned}
$$

DRILL 3: QUESTION AND ANSWER

Listen and answer the following questions, either in English or Arabic.
جاوب الأسئلة التالية اما بالانكليزية او العربية.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 1. شو اسم عاصمة البحهورية اللبنانية؟ } \\
& \text { Y. شو اسم عاصمة الملكة الأردنية؟ } \\
& \text { r. شو اسم عاصمة الدولة الكويتيَ؟ } \\
& \text { ع. شو اسم عاصمة البمهورية السورية؟ } \\
& \text { • . شو اسم عاصدة الملكة السعو دية؟ } \\
& \text { 7. شو اسم عاصمة البمهورية الصرية؟ } \\
& \text {. شو اسم عاصمة الملطنة العمانية؟ .V }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 4:TRUE OR FALSE

Answer yes or no to the following statements.
أجب عن البمل التالية بنعم او لا.

ا. الأمير عبد اللّ هو ملك الملكة الأردنية.
Y. ب. الرياض مشُ عاصمة الملكة السعودية. r. القاهرة هي عاصمة الإمارة المصرية.

ع. اميل لـود هو رئيس المبهورية اللبنانية.
0. مدينة بيروت هي مدينة لبنانية.
7. هدينة عمان هي عاصمة الملكة الأردنية.
V. المليج العربي غرب جزيرة العرب.
$\qquad$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 1. البحر الأحمر مش في العالم العربي. } \\
& \text { 9. الماكة الأردنية كانت أمريكية. } \\
& \text { • }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 5: IDENTIFICATION

التمرين المامس: تحديد
a. Identify the construct phrases by underlining them.
أ. ارسم خحطا تحت الإضافة.
b. Identify the noun-adjective phrases by circling them.
ب. ارسم دائرة حول الصفة.
c. Some of the information in these sentences may be wrong. Put a check by a sentence that is untrue.
ج. رعا كان بعض المعلومات في هذه البمل خطأ. ارسم علامة »XX امام المـملة الخطأ.
d. Check the results with your teacher:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { د. راجع أستاذك بشأن النتائج. } \\
& \text { ا. عمّان عاصمة. } \\
& \text { r. عمّان هي العاصمة. } \\
& \text { r. عمّان هي العاصمة الأردنية. } \\
& \text { ₹ . عمّان هي عاصمة الأردن. } \\
& \text { ا. القاهرة مدينة. } \\
& \text { r. القّاهرة مدينة عربية. } \\
& \text { r. . القاهرة مدينة في السودان. } \\
& \text { ع . القاهرة ملدينة دصرية. }
\end{aligned}
$$

| ا. . سوريا جمهورية.
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$ ६. اسم عاصمة الجمهورية الصورية هو دمشتى. $\qquad$
ا. الكويت دولة.
$\qquad$
r. دولة الكويت هي دولة عربية.
$\qquad$
r. الكويت دولة شرقية في الخنليج العربي.
$\qquad$
६. اسم أمير دولة الكويت هو النيخ ابن زايد بن سلطان.
$\qquad$

DRILL 6: COMPLETION
Fill in the blank with the letter that corresponds to the appropriate country.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { املأ الفراغ في ابلمل التالية بحرف البلد المناسب: } \\
& \text { i i. السعودية } \\
& \text { ب. ب. } \\
& \text { ج. أمريكا } \\
& \text { د. عُمان } \\
& \text { • } \\
& \text { و. الكويت } \\
& \text { ز. الأردن }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 7: COMPLETION

## التمرين السابع: تكميل

Fill in the blank with the letter that corresponds to the appropriate city.
امأ الفراغ ب大رف العاصمة المناسبة.

## DRILL 8: IDENTIFICATION

Write the letter " $M$ " next to masculine noun-adjective phrases and the letter " $F$ " next to the feminine ones.
اكتب الحرف »M《 أمام الصفة المذكر والحرف »F٪ أمام المؤنت.


## DRILL 9: COMPLETION

Fill in the blank with the letter that corresponds to the appropriate adjective.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { املأ الفراغ بحرف الصفة المناسبة: } \\
& \text { أ. أمريكية } \\
& \text { ب. أردني } \\
& \text { ج. عربية } \\
& \text { د. سعودي } \\
& \text {. أمريكي } \\
& \text { و. مصري } \\
& \text { ز. ز. } \\
& \text { ح. اللeودية } \\
& \text { ط. العربية }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ع. لبنان جمهورية } \\
& \text { 0. الملك عبد الله } \\
& \text { 7. الرئيس حسين مبارك } \\
& \text { ملـينة واشنـطن .V } \\
& \text { المتحدة. } \\
& \text {. } 9
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL IO: MEANINGFUL USE

In this exercise you will be using a map of the Arab world and responding to directions (in Arabic) from the teacher to point out a certain number of things on the map. You are already familiar with the numbers one to ten. Now you will be asked to make use of this knowledge in responding to the teacher's instructions.

في هذا التمرين استعمل خر يطة العالم العربي لتدل على هو اقع يذكرها لك الأستاذ. وحيث أنك الآلن تعرف الأرقام واحاًا إلى عشرة سيطلب منكك الأستاذ أن تطبق هذه المعرنة بتجاوبك مع تعليماته.

Here are some of the types of things you may be asked:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ا } \\
& \text { r. r. دلي على إمارة واحلية. } \\
& \text { r. r. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ع. دلي على أربعة بحار } \\
& \text { ه. } \\
& \text { 7. دلي على ثلاث مدن عربية في شئمال افر يقيا. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## TASK I

Listen to the following dialogue a few times. Then, both by listening and looking at the text, underline all of the nationality adjectives, and identify what gender they are and whether they are definite or indefinite.
أصغ إلى الهوار التالي بضع مرات وفيما أنت تصغي وتططع على النص ارسم خطاً تحت كل صفة وحاول أن تحدد البنس من حيث التذكير والتأنيث فيها. وهل مي معرفة أو نكرة.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { وين تدرس؟ } \\
& .1 \\
& \text { r_ أدرس في المامعة الأمريكية في بيروت. }
\end{aligned}
$$

هذه جامعة دشهورة جداً. $\qquad$ .1

نعم، معنا طلاب من دول كثيرة. $\qquad$ .

أكيد عندك أصدقاء من جنـيات كـيرة. $\qquad$1

نعم، عندي صديق لبناني وصديق سعودي وصديق عراقي وصديق كويتي وأصدقاء $\qquad$ عرب كثار.

ما عندك أصدقاء من أمير كا أو أوروبا؟ $\qquad$ .1

عندي صديقة فرنسبة وعندي صديق أمريكي. $\qquad$ .

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ما فيه ولا طالب أردني في الجامعة؟ } \\
& \text {. . }
\end{aligned}
$$

## 0 TASK 2

The following is the text of a typical Arabic news bulletin. First there is a summary of news headlines and then the news in detail. Listen to the newscast a few times and then, both by reading the text and by listening, circle all of the names of the countries and underline all the nationality adjectives.

النص التالي صورة نوذجية لنشرة الأخبار باللغة العربية. أولا المو جز. يليه النشرة بالتفصيل. أصغ إلى
 وخططا تحت كل صفة.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { موجز النُّرة: } \\
& \text { I ـ الملكة العربية السعودية تعارض رفع أسعار النفط. }
\end{aligned}
$$

r. r. مباحثات السلام بين مصر وإسر ائيل تستمر في القاهرة.

## الأنباء بالتفصيل:

ا. بدأت أمس في فيينا اجتماعات منظمة الدول الاصلرة للنفط 》أو بيك"، ودارت مناقشات مهيمة

 الملكة العربية السعودية لن توافق على زيادة أسعار النفط ولا على تَينفيض إنتاج النفط السعودي.





- الإسرائيلية. وأعلن متحدث باسم الوفد الانصري عقب انتهاء البلسِة أن المان المباحثات سوف


LESSON SIX

## الدرس السادس

## Review

## OVERVIEW

In this lesson no new material-vocabulary or grammar-is introduced. It is a review lesson of what you have already studied. But you are now expected to write exercises in Arabic, to read Arabic aloud, and to respond to simple questions in Arabic.

## DRILL I: COMPLETION

التمرين الأول: تكميل

Write the appropriate word in the blanks.

> املأ الفراغ بالكلمة المناسبة.
o
د. دولة
ج. سلطنة
ب. ملكة
أ. جمهورية
$\qquad$
$\qquad$ r. r.
$\qquad$ ع. سورية
-


## DRILL 2: COMPLETION

التمرين الثاين: تكميل

Write the appropriate word in the blanks.


## DRILL 3: COMPLETION

التمرين الثالث: تكميل

Write the appropriate word in the blanks.
اماكُ الفر اغ بالكلمة المناسبة.


DRILL 4: COMPLETION
التمرين الرابع: تكميل
Write in the names of the capitals in the following sentences and read the sentences aloud.

اكتب أسماء العواصم في الجمل التالية واقرأ البمل بصوت مسموع.

1. عاصمة البمهورية الصرية هي
Y. Y. عاصمة الملـكة السعودية هي
○. عاصمة البمهور رية العر اقية هي
2. عاصمة المـلكة الأردنية هي
V. عاصمة سلطنة عمان هي
ـ. عاصمة الجمهورية السورية هي
3. عاصمة البـههورية التونسية هي .

- .


## DRILL 5: COMPLETION

Write in the appropriate place names.
املأ الفراغ باسم المكان المناسب.

## DRILL 6: COMPLETION

Write the name of the appropriate person in the blank.
املأ الفراغ باسم الشخص المناسب.
I. رئسس جمهورية مصر العربية هو r. أمير الملكة العربية هو
$\qquad$
 ○. رئيس جهورية سورية هو
$\qquad$
7. سلطان ساطنة عمان هو V . أمير الإمارات العربية التحدة هو

## DRILL 7: COMPLETION

التمرين السابع: تكميل

Write the full name of the country in the blanks.


Answer the following questions with complete sentences:
أَب عن الأسئلة التالية في جمل كاملة.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ع. r. بين أمير الكويت؟ } \\
& \text { - ع . مين سلطان عمان؟ } \\
& \text { ○ • مين أمير أبو ظي؟ } \\
& \text { 7. الـين ملك الأردن؟ } \\
& \text { مـين رئيس مصر؟ .V }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { بـ ـ من وين الملك عبد اللهُ؟ } \\
& \text { r. r. من وين الرئيس بشار الأسد؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { • • من و وين الأمير عبد اللهّ؟ } \\
& \text { 7. من وين الرئيس اميل لـودبه }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 1. شو عاصمة لبنان؟ } \\
& \text { Y Y شو عاصوهة السعودية؟ } \\
& \text { r. r. شو عاصهة العر اق؟ } \\
& \text { ६. شو عاصمة الكويت؟ } \\
& \text { ○ ـ شو عاصهة عمان؟ } \\
& \text { 7. شو عاصهة الأردن؟ } \\
& \text { V V. شو عاصمة سوريا؟ } \\
& \text { 1. . شو عاصمة مصر؟؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. } 9 \\
& \text { 1. وين فَر النيل؟ } \\
& \text { r. r. وين جبل الشـيخ؟ } \\
& \text { r. 「. وين صحر اء اء النفودبْ } \\
& \text { § . وين جزيرة مصيرْ؟؟ } \\
& \text { ○ ه وين قناة السويس؟ } \\
& \text { 7. وين خليج العقبَ؟ } \\
& \text { V V. وين البحر الأحمر؟ } \\
& \text { ^^. وين وادي الملوك؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

LESSON SEVEN


Geography II

## OVERVIEW

In this lesson you will cover names of people and places in the Arab world. With this supplemental information, you will have been exposed to basic geographic and governmental data on twenty Arab countries.

The first part of this lesson introduces you to some new vocabulary, but there are no new grammar structures to master. The second part of the lesson requires that you practice reading, writing, and speaking about the information contained in the first part of this lesson.

## MATRIX DIALOGUE

Listen to the matrix dialogue and then discuss it with your teacher.

## $\delta$ BASIC INFORMATION PART I

لمعلومات الأساسية: القسم الأول
الجْغر افية

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { دجلة في العر اق وفر الفرات في العراق وسوريا وفر اللطاني في لبنان وفر الأردن في الأردن. والضا ونـئ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { بآثار ها وأسوان المعروفة بالسد العالي. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { إير ان وجبال طوروس وهي تقع في تر كيا. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Geography

The countries of the Fertile Crescent are Lebanon, Syria, Iraq, Palestine, and Jordan. There are four rivers in the Fertile Crescent: the Tigris River in Iraq, the Euphrates River in Iraq and Syria, the Litani River in Lebanon, and the Jordan River in Jordan. On the west bank of the Jordan River is a famous ancient city, Jerusalem. Also in the Fertile Crescent are the Dead Sea and the city of Palmyra.

Mecca, Jidda, Dhahran, and Riyadh are among the important cities of Saudi Arabia. Mecca and Jidda are in the Hijaz and Dhahran is in the eastern peninsula north of the Empty Quarter desert. The city of Riyadh is in the Nejd.

Port Said and Alexandria are among the famous cities of northern Egypt. In the south of the country are Luxor, known for its antiquities, and Aswan, known for the High Dam.

There are many islands in the Mediterranean. Among them are the islands of Cyprus and Malta, and the island of Djerba.

Among the famous mountains in the Middle East are the Atlas mountains in Algeria and Morocco, the Zagros Mountains in Iran, and the Taurus Mountains located in Turkey.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { زعماء العالم العربي } \\
& \text { في العالم العربي •r بلد في أفريقيا وTآيا. في شمال أفريقيا فيه جمهورية موريتانيا ورئيسها هو دعاوية } \\
& \text { ولد سيدي أحمد الطايع وعاصمتها نواكشوط وفيه كمان ملكة المغرب وملكها هو عمد السادس }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { الصومال و جيبوتي كمان من البالد العربية الافريقية. رئيس الصومال هو عبد الله يو سف أحمد }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { من البلاد العر بية في آسيا: دولة البحرين وأميرها هو الشيخ مملد بن عيسى آل خليفة وعاهـهتها }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { الجمهور رية اليمنية ورئيسها علي عبد الله صالح. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Leaders of the Arab World

There are twenty countries in the Arab world, in Africa, and in Asia. In North Africa there is Mauritania, whose president is Maaouya Ould Sid Ahmed Taya and its capital is Nouakchott. There is also the Kingdom of Morocco, whose king is Mohammad the Sixth bin Al-Hassan and whose capital is Rabat. Among its famous cities are Casablanca and Tangiers.

Algeria is also situated in North Africa. Its president is Abd al-Aziz Bouteflika and its capital is the city of Algiers. The capital of Tunisia is the city of Tunis and its president is Zine al-Abideen bin Ali. Libya is also one of the countries of North Africa and its capital is Tripoli. Libya was a kingdom, then it became a republic, and now it is a "jamaahiriyya." The leader of the Libyan Jamahiriyya is Colonel Muammar Qadhdhafi.

Somalia and Djibouti are also Arab African countries. The president of Somalia is Abdullahi Yusuf Ahmed and its capital is Mogadisciu. The president of Djibouti is Ismail Omar Guelleh and the name of its capital is Djibouti.

Among the Arab countries in Asia are the State of Bahrain, whose prince is Hamad bin Aissa Al Khalifa and whose capital is Manama; and the State of Qatar, whose prince is Hamad bin Khalifa Al Thani and whose capital is Doha.

Among the countries of the Arabian Peninsula is Yemen, whose capital is Sanaa, whose official name is the Yemeni Republic, and its president is Ali Abdallah Salih.

## $\delta$ vOCABULARY PART I

المو دات: القسم الأول

| seventh | سابع | the Empty Quarter | الرُّبُع الْحالي |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| information | مَعْلومات | Port Said | بور سُعيد |
| basic | أُساسي | Alexandria | الإِسْكْنْرَبَّة |
| country | بَبلد (باد) | Luxor | الأُقْصر |
| the Fertile Crescent |  | antiquities, ruins | آثار |
| the Tigris River | نَهْرْ دِجْلة | Aswan | أسْوانِ |
| the Euphrates River | نَهْر الفُرات | dam | سَّدّ (سُدود) |
| the Litani River | نَهْرْ اللِّطاني | high | عالي |
| the West Bank | الضَّفّة الْغَربِبِّ | the High Dam | السَّدّ العالِ |
| old, ancient | قِكدم (قُدَماء) | Cyprus | فبرص |
| Jerusalem | الْقُدْسِ | Malta | مالطّا |
| the Dead Sea | الْبَحْرْ الْمِيِّتِ | Djerba |  |
| Palmyra | تَكْمْرُ | the Atlas Mountains | جبَال الأطلْسِ |
| Mecca | ة | the Middle East | الشَّرَّ الأُوْهِ |
| Jidda | جلَّة | Algeria | الْجَز ائرِ |
| Dhahran | الظْهُرْ | Morocco | ب |
| city | مَدِنَة (مُلُن) | the Zagros Mountains | جبال زاغروس |
| important | مُهـّمّ (-ين) | Iran | إير ان |
| is/are situated | تَقع | the Taurus Mountains | جبال طوروس |
| the Hijaz | الْحِجاز | Turkey | تُرْكِ |

## VOCABULARY PART 2

القسم الثاين

| leader | زَعيم (زُعَماء) | Nouakchott | نو اكشوط |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Mauritania | موريتانيا | Rabat | الرِّباط |

Casablanca
Tangiers
Libya
current, present now, currently, at the present time "jamahiriyya" colonel

## SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

## مفردات إضافية

سِبْعْةُ عَشُرَ
َُمانيَّة عَشَرُ
تِسْعْةَ عَشَرْرُ
عِشْرِين
واحِد وَعِشْرِ ين

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 17 \\
& 1818 \\
& 19 \\
& 20 \\
& 21 \\
& \text { سِبَّة عَشَرُ }
\end{aligned}
$$

Underline the names of any rulers in the following sentences:
ارسم خطا تحت اسم الحاكم في ابلممل التالية: الشيخ حمد بن عيسى آل خليفة أميردولة البحرين.
ץ. الشيخ ابن زايد بن سلطان آل فيان أمير دولة الإمارات العر بية التحدة.
「. الرئيس عبد العزيز بوتفليقة رئيس جمهورية البزائر.
ع. الرئيس زين العابدين بن علي رئـس جمهورية تونس.
ه . الرئيس عمر حسن أممد البشير رئيس جمهورية السودان.
4. العقيد معمر القذاوي زعمـم المحاهيرية الليبية الشُعبية.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Somalia } \\
& \text { الصُّوْمال } \\
& \text { طَنْحَهَ Djibouti } \\
& \text { Mogadisciu } \\
& \text { فـِ الْوْقِّتْ الْحاضِر } \\
& \text { Qatar } \\
& \text { جيبوّي } \\
& \text { مُقْديشو } \\
& \text { قَطَرِ } \\
& \text { الدّو حَة } \\
& \text { الْمِّنَ } \\
& \text { جَماهيريِّة } \\
& \text { صَنْعاء }
\end{aligned}
$$

V الملك عمد السادس بن المسن ملك مكمة المغرب.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ^. الرئيس معاوية ولد سيدي أمد الطايع رئيس جمهورية موريتانيا. } \\
& \text { 9. الرئيس عبد الله يوسف أحمد رئيس جهورية الصومال. } \\
& \text {. . الرئيس علي عبد الله صالح رئيس جهور الـية اليمن. } \\
& \text { 11. الشيخ ممد بن خليفة آل ثاني أمير دولة قطر. } \\
& \text { r Y. الرئيس إمماعيل عمر جيلله رئيس جمهورية جيوتي. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Underline the names of capital cities in the following sentences:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ارسم خطا تحت اسماء العواصم في الجمل التالية: } \\
& \text { 1. مدينة المنامة هي عاصهة البحر ين. } \\
& \text { r. مدينة أبو ظبي هي عاصمة الإمارات العر بية المتحدة. } \\
& \text { r. مـ مدينة جيبو } \\
& \text { ع. ماينة البز ائر هي عاصهة البز ائر. } \\
& \text { ○ . مدينة تونس هي عاصمة تونس. } \\
& 7 \text { 7. ماينة الدو حة هي عاضمة فطر. } \\
& \text { V. V. مدينة طرابلس مي عاصمة ليبيا. } \\
& \text { 1. مدينة الرباط هي عاصمة المغرب. } \\
& 9 \text { 9. مدينة نواكثئوط هي عاصمة موريتانيا. } \\
& \text { • } \\
& \text { 11. مدينة الخرطوم هي عاصمة السودان. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 3: IDENTIFICATION

Underline the geographic place names in the following sentences:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ارسم خطا تحت اسماء الأماكن المغرافية في المهل التالية: } \\
& \text { 1. جبال الأطلى في المغرب. } \\
& \text { r. صحراء الربع الـالي في السعودية. } \\
& \text { r. فر الليطاني فيز لبنان. } \\
& \text { ع. هُ الفرات وغر دجلة في العراق. } \\
& \text { 0. جزيرة قبرص في البحر الأبيض المتوسط. } \\
& \text { 7. وادي النيل في مصر. } \\
& \text { V. V خليج العقبة في الأردن. } \\
& \text { 1. جبل الشَيخ في لبنان. } \\
& \text { 9. خليج السويس في مصر. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 4: COMPLETION

Write the letter that corresponds to the correct capital in the blank.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { املأ الفراغ في ابلمل التالية بحرف العاصمة المناسبة. } \\
& \text { i. الـ. الرباط } \\
& \text {. } \\
& \text { ب. مقّديشو } \\
& \text { ج. الدوحة } \\
& \text { د. جيبوتي } \\
& \text { ه. نو كشوط } \\
& \text { - و. البزائر } \\
& \text { r. r. عاصمة اليمن هي } \\
& \text { r. ع. عاصمة موريتانيا هي } \\
& \text { ع. عاصـة البز ائر هي }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { T. }
\end{aligned}
$$

ط. ط. أبوظبي

## DRILL 5: COMPLETION

. عاصهة الصومال هي . .

- . .

9. عاصمة البحرين هي

Write the letter that corresponds to the appropriate place in the blank.


## DRILL 6: COMPLETION

Write the letter that corresponds to the correct country in the blank.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { املأ الغراغ في ابلمل التالية برف البلد المناسب. }
\end{aligned}
$$

ج. المغرب
د. الإمارات العربية
。
و. البحرين
$\qquad$ r. r. العقيد معمرالقذافي من
$\qquad$ ₹. عبد العز يز بوتفليقة من
$\qquad$ ه . الشَيخ حمل بن عيسى آل خايفة من
$\qquad$ 7. العقيد علي عبد اله صال من

DRILL 7: COMPLETION
التمرين السابع: تكميل
Choose the appropriate word and write it in the blank.
امـأُ الفراغ بالكلمة المناسبة.

$\qquad$ ا ـ البحرين
$\qquad$ r. الإمارات العربية المتجدة
$\qquad$ r. جيبو
$\qquad$ §. البزائر
$\qquad$ ه. تونس
$\qquad$ 7
$\qquad$ ليبيا.V
$\qquad$ 1ـ المغرب
$\qquad$ 9. موريتانيا
$\qquad$ . 1 . الصومال
11

## DRILL 8: COMPLETION

Choose the appropriate geographic term and write it in the blank.


## DRILL 9: COMPLETION

Choosing from the words listed, write the appropriate one in the blank.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { املأ الفراغ بالكلمة المناسبة. }
\end{aligned}
$$



DRILL 10: COMPLETION
التمرين العاشر: تكميل
Fill in the blanks with the name of the appropriate country.
املأ الفراغ باسم البلد المناسب.
I. العقيد علي عبد الله صال هو رئيس r. الشتيخ ابن زايد بن سلطان هو أمير r. السيد معاوية ولد سيدي أحمد الطايع هو رئيس ₹ . العقيد معمر القَافي هو زعيم
 T T. الضيخ . السيد عمر أحمد البشير هو رئيس . . الس . . الرئيس عبد الaزيز بوتفليقة هو رئيس

## DRILL I I: COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences by writing in the name of the appropriate head of state. امl ألفرا اغ في البمل التالية باسم رئيس الدولة المناسبة.
$\qquad$ ^. رئيس جمهورية موريتانيا هو

## DRILL 1 2: COMPLETION

التمرين الثابي عشر: تكميل
Fill in the blanks with the names of the appropriate capitals.
امالٔ الفرا غ باسم العاصمة المناسبة.

r. عاصمة دولة قطر هي
§ ع عاصمة الجمهورية البز ائرية هي

7.
$\qquad$

## DRILL I3: COMPLETION

التمرين الثاين عشر: تكميل

Fill in the hlanks with the names of the appropriate places.


As you did in the previous lesson, listen to these questions. Then try to come up with appropriate answers on your own.

اصغ إلى الأسئلة التالية ثم حاول أن بتاوبها أنت بنفسك.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ا. المين أمير قطر؟ } \\
& \text { Y. r. rين رئيس الجززائر؟ } \\
& \text { r. } \\
& \text { ₹ . مين ملك المغرب؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ه. مين رئيس الصوهال؟ } \\
& \text { Y. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ^. . مين أمير البحرين؟ } \\
& \text { 9. مين رئيس السودان؟ } \\
& \text { 1. شو عاصمة الصومال؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ع. شو عاصهة المغرب؟ } \\
& \text { ○. شو عاصهة ليبيا؟ } \\
& \text { Y. شو عاصوهة قطر؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ^. . شو عاصمة الأردن؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { I. وين فردج } \\
& \text { r. r. وين صحراء الر بع النالي؟ } \\
& \text { r. r. وين وادي النيل؟ } \\
& \text { を. وين جـبل عرفات؟ } \\
& \text { ○. } \\
& \text { 7. وين جز يرة سقطرة؟ } \\
& \text { V. V. وين جبال الأطس؟ وين } \\
& \text { 1. وين فر الليطانج؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

LESSON EIGHT


## Lost Luggage

## OVERVIEW

Lesson 8 is the first lesson in the second stage of the Formal Spoken Arabic course. Up to this point you have focused primarily on comprehension of Formal Spoken Arabic in its oral and written forms. Now that you have covered a considerable amount of comprehension material, you are ready to start actively practicing conversations that will be useful to you when you arrive in the Arab world. The lessons in this stage of the text, therefore, more closely resemble the traditional textbook approach to a spoken language. That is, there will be a basic dialogue for you to work on and memorize, and drills and exercises to complete orally and in writing. You will also engage in communicative activities that vary, strengthen, and extend your ability to express yourself, to get your needs across in Arabic, and to understand the spoken language as you hear native speakers using it. For the rest of the book, you will follow the interactions of Mark Stanley, who has just been assigned to the U.S. embassy in Amman, Jordan.

The accompanying CD continues to introduce each lesson with a matrix dialogue between two or more native speakers of Arabic enacting a situation similar to the one in the basic dialogue. Use the matrix dialogues to accustom yourself to spoken Arabic interaction and to assess your comprehension skills periodically as you progress through the material in the text.

## GRAMMAR POINTS

I. Demonstrative pronouns
II. Possessive pronouns
III. "To have" -عِنْ
IV. Past tense conjugation
V. Predicate adjectives
VI. Colors

## So matrix dialogue

## $\sigma_{\text {basic dialogue }}$

الحوار الأساسي


## English version

1. Employee: Good morning, sir. May I be of service?
2. Mark:

Good morning. Yes. I (just) now arrived from London and I have a problem.
3. Employee: Nothing serious, I hope.
4. Mark: It seems my suitcase is lost. ("It seems they lost my suitcase.")
5. Employee: What is the size of the suitcase?
6. Mark: Medium. That is, it's neither big nor small.
7. Employee: And its color?
8. Mark: It's blue
9. Employee: Just a minute, please. . . . Is this your suitcase?
10. Mark: No. That's not it. My suitcase is like that one (over there).
11. Employee: Possibly this one?
12. Mark: Yes, thanks very much.
13. Employee: How many suitcases do you have? Just one?
14. Mark: Yes. I've only got one. Thanks for your help.
15. Employee: You're welcome. Good-bye.
16. Mark: Good-bye.


| eighth | ثامِ | good, goodness |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| dialogue, conversation | حِوار | I hope, hopefully ("If | إن شاءُ الله |
| employee | مُوَظٌ (-ين) | God wills.") |  |
| good morning (initial | صَبَاح الْحَيْر | Nothing serious, I | خَيْر إنْ شاءَ الله |
| greeting) |  | hope. ("Good, if |  |
| particle of address | يا | God wills.") |  |
| any, which (+ noun) | أَيّ | they lost | ض |
| service | خِّدْمَ | suitcase; briefcase | شَخْطِّ (شُنُط) |
| good morning (in | صبّاح النّور | my suitcase | شَنْطِيُ |
| response) |  | size | حج |
| now, just now | '0, | medium (adjective) | وسط |
| I arrived, I have | وصلت | that is, I mean, well | يع |
| arrived |  | neither . . . nor |  |
| London | لْنْدَنِ | big | كبير (كبار) |
| I have | عِنْدي | small | صَغير (صغار) |
| problem | مُشْكِكِلِ | color | لَوْنِ (أَلْوان) |
|  | (مُشْاكِله، | its color | لَوْها |


answer

question
سُؤال (أَسْئِلَة)
on, upon
طاولَة (-ات)
book
كِتاب (كُتُب) (كُ
to, toward
chair
class; classroom
paper
pen; pencil
notebook

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { كُرْسي (كَرَاسي) student (m.) } \\
& \text { صَفْ (صُفوف) student (f.) } \\
& \text { negative particle }
\end{aligned}
$$



طالِبَة قَ قَمَ (أَقْلام) I don't have
there isn't any
ما ما عِنْدي

## DRILL I: COMPLETION

This is a completion drill based on the dialogue. After listening to the dialogue several times and becoming familiar with the vocabulary, have a look at this drill (sections a and b) and try to complete the sentences orally. Once you can say the completed sentences, write in the missing words. Check your spelling with your teacher.




Section a



Section b
قسم ب ب
(


## DRILL 2: SCRAMBLED DIALOGUE

The aim of this drill is to give you greater fluency in handling the dialogue, both in chunks, and as a whole. There are several steps to this drill:
a. Arrange the sentences in sequence by numbering them.
b. Teacher reads lines one at a time in random order; students give line that should follow (without looking at the dialogue).
c. Students give lines from dialogue that they remember-not necessarily in sequence, but until all lines are accounted for: (Lines don't have to be exact, but they should be close to the original.)
d. Students take turns saying any line from the dialogue they can remember: Teacher (without looking at text) gives the following line.
e. One student says a line from the dialogue and another student gives the following line.
f. Role plays: Teacher takes part of Arab employee and rehearses dialogue with each student.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { الهدف من هذا التمرين مساعدة الطالب في استعمال عبارات الحوار حيثما بيب. رقّم الجمل التالية } \\
& \text { حــب ترتيبها في الموار الأساسي. } \\
& \text { بمكن هني؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { لوفا أزرق. } \\
& \text { خحير ان شاء اللّه. } \\
& \text { شو حجم الشنطة؟ } \\
& \text { اللّة يــلـك } \\
& \text { وسط. يعي، لا كبيرة ولا صغيرة } \\
& \text { - صباح النور، نعم. هلا وصلت من لندن وعندي مشطكة. }
\end{aligned}
$$



## SPEAKING ACTIVITY A

Goal:
To require students to recognize when lines of the dialogue are appropriate even in contexts that are not identical to the original.
Materials: Basic dialogue.
Procedure: Go through the basic dialogue, teacher playing the employee and students, in turns, playing Mark.

1. Teacher departs slightly from original lines, sometimes by adding exclamations or other sentences that were not in the original, but keeping lines in original order.
2. As above, but teacher doesn't always preserve original order of thoughts. Students may keep to original lines or depart slightly from them.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

## I. Demonstrative pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns (this, that, these, those) in spoken Arabic consist of two sets of three:

| this (m.) | هنا | that (m.) | هذاك |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| this (f.) | هني | that (f.) | هذيك |
| these (m. \& f.) | هذول | those (m. \& f.) | هذولاك |

Demonstrative pronouns agree with the nouns they refer to in gender and number in the singular, and in number only in the plural. (A "dual" form exists in literary Arabic, but it is generally not used in spoken Arabic.)

They are used in three ways:
A. As substitutes for a noun:

> What's this?
> شو هذا؟

Did you lose this (one)?
ضيّعت هذي؟

That (one) isn't red.
هذاك مش أحمر.
B. As modifiers for nouns in demonstrative phrases:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { These kings aren’t Arabs. } ه \text { هذرل الملوك مشرب. }
\end{aligned}
$$

That island is small.
هذيك البزز يرة صغيرة.

Did they find that book?
وجدوا هذاك الكتاب؟

Note that when a demonstrative adjective modifies a noun directly, the noun carries the definite article_(This is discussed more extensively in Lesson 11.)
C. As subjects of equational sentences:

This is his suitcase.
هذي شنطته.

This is a big class.
هذا صفّ كبير.

That is a famous mountain.
هذاك جبل مشهور.

## DRILL 3: COMPLETION

This drill is in two parts. Section a practices the use of the demonstratives "this" and "these." Your teacher will have you do the drill orally at first; then you will be asked to write in the appropriate form of the pronoun.


 الفر اغات في التمرين بأسماء الإشارة المناسبة.

Section a
Examples
ملوكينة. - هـوكي مدينة.
اسم الأمير.
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
\&
7.

$$
\text { V } V
$$

$$
\text { - } \cdot
$$

$$
\text { 9. } 9
$$

Section b
قسم ب
Examples
مثالان

$$
\text { I } 1
$$

قلم أحمر.
r
O

$$
\text { 7. } 7
$$

.V
^. .

$$
\square .9
$$

$$
\text { 10 } 10
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { صورة. ه هذيك صورة. } \\
& \text { أمراء. هـوراء هاك أمراء. }
\end{aligned}
$$

II. Possessive pronoun suffixes

As mentioned in Lesson 4, the possessive pronouns (my, your, his, her, our, their) in Arabic are suffixed to the end of the word (noun) which they possess. Whereas English has a set of six, Arabic has a set of eight:

Possessive pronouns

Plural
Singular

| our | ن- | my | s- |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | your (m.) | s- |
| your (pl.) | كُ | your (f.) | s- |
|  |  | his | ó- |
| their | her | her | L- |

Example of masculine noun with possessive pronouns:

كتاب

Plural

| our book | كتابنا | my book | كتابي |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | your (m.) book | كتابَك |
| your (pl.) book | كتابُمُم | your (f.) book | كتابك |
|  |  | his book | كتابُه |
| their book | كتابُهـم | her book | كتاهِا |

Example of feminine noun with possessive pronoun suffixes:


Plural
Singular

| our suitcase | ثـطـنـا | my suitcase | \#نطت |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | your (m.) suitcase | ثنـطِك |
| your (pl.) suitcase | شنطשׂُم | your (f.) suitcase |  |
|  |  | his suitcase | شنطلُه |
| their suitcase | ثنططُمُم | her suitcase | ش:طتها |

## Stress shift

As you listen to this paradigm (pattern), you will hear a shift in stress in the word شن:طة. This occurs sometimes when the pronoun suffix starts with a consonant (-hā, -nā, -kum, and -hum).

## Examples

| شنطة شنطتك شنطتكم | šánṭa | suitcase |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| šánṭat-ak | šanṭát-kum | your m.$)$ suitcase |
| sin | your pl.$)$ suitcase |  |

This happens most often with words that end in $t \bar{a}^{?}$ marbūta and with other words such as دفتر, where the original stress is not on the final syllable:

| دفتر | dáftar | notebook |
| ---: | :--- | :--- |
| دفترك | dáftar-ak | your (m.) notebook |
| دفتر | daftár-kum | your (pl.) notebook |

With a word like كتابُ, where the stress is on the final syllable, there is no stress shift.

| كتاب كتابك | kitaáb | book |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| كتابكم | kitaáb-ak | your (m.) book |
| kitaáb-kum | your (pl.) book |  |

## DRILL 4: SUBSTITUTION

التمرين الرابع: تبليل
Substitute the other seven possessive pronouns for the possessive suffix in these sentences and read them aloud.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { استعمل الضمائر المتصلة السبعة الباقية بدلا من ضمير الثكلمّ في ابجمل الأربع التالية. تم اقر أ الجمل } \\
& \text { بصوت مسمو ع } \\
& \text { ا . دفتري مشن هنا. } \\
& \text { r r r r r r reلي كبيرة. } \\
& \text { r. } \\
& \text {. \& }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 5:TRANSLATION

الكمرين الخامس: ترجهة
Translate the following phrases into Arabic:
ترجم العبارات التالية إلى العربية:

1. my family
2. their country
3. your (f.) problems
4. their king
5. your (pl.) capital
6. her house
7. your (m.) help
8. our president
9. his employees
10. our government
$\delta$ III. "To have" عِنْد-

Arabic does not use a verb to express the concept of "have." Instead, it uses the preposition "at" plus an object pronoun suffix, so that what is said is actually a locative expression, e.g., at-me ("I have"), at-him ("he has"), etc. (The object pronouns correspond to the possessive pronouns.)

The complete paradigm looks like this:


I have a question.
عندي سؤ ال.

We have a lot of time.
عندنا وقت كثير .

They have a problem.
عندهم مشكلة.

To negate عِند, place the negative marker on on in front of it.

I don't have a question.
ما عندي سؤال.

We don't have a lot of time.
ما عندنا وقت كثير .

They don't have a problem.

```
ما عندهم /ششكة.
```


## DRILL 6: COMPREHENSION

التمرين السادس: للفهم

Listen to your teacher say the following sentences. Then give the English equivalent.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { استمع إلى أستاذك يرذّد ابلمهل التاللية Fَ أعط معناها بالإنكليزيّة. } \\
& \text { ا. } \\
& \text { r. عندها شثـكلة صغيرة. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ع . كم قلم عند كم؟ } \\
& \text { ○. شو عندك في الــنطة؟ } \\
& \text { Y . ما عندنا طاولة في الصفّ. } \\
& \text {, V }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 7:TRANSLATION

التمرين السابع: تر بجة

Translate the following short sentences into Arabic.
ترجم الجمل القصيرة التالية إلى العربية.

1. We have problems.
2. Do they have the pictures?
3. I don't have your book.
4. She has a small problem.
5. Do you (m.) have the papers?
6. Don't you (f.) have time?
7. He has only one notebook.
8. Does she have a big house?
9. We don't have the information.
10. They don't have our suitcases.

## BIV. Past tense conjugation

In this lesson there are two verbs: "to arrive" وصل and "to lose" ضّي". They are both used in the past tense.

I just arrived from London.
هلا وصلت من لندن.

It seems they lost my suitcase.


The past tense conjugation is formed by taking the past tense "stem"-which is the same as the third person masculine singular-and suffixing subject markers to it.

## A. Arabic paradigms

Arabs conjugate verbs by person rather than by number. That is, instead of saying, "I arrived, you arrived, he arrived," etc., they generally say, "he arrived, she arrived, they arrived, you (m.) arrived, you (f.) arrived, you (pl.) arrived, I arrived, we arrived," going from third person to second person to first person as follows:

وَصَل

| 3rd person he, she, they | وَصَوا they arrived | وَصَلَت she arrived | وُصَل <br> he arrived |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2nd person you | وُصَلْتو1 <br> you (pl.) arrived | $\begin{gathered} \text { وَصَكْتِ (f.) arrived } \\ \text { you } \end{gathered}$ | ورصَلْت you (m.) arrived |
| lst person I, we | وَصَلْنا <br> - we arrived |  | ورصَتْت <br> I arrived |

## B. Stress shift

As you listen to the verb being conjugated, note the shift in stress that occurs from the first syllable (in the third person) to the second syllable (in the second and first persons).

| wáṣal <br> he arrived | wáṣalat <br> she arrived | wáṣalū <br> they arrived |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| waṣált <br> you (m.) arrived | waṣálti <br> you (f.) arrived | waṣáltū <br> you (pl.) arrived |
| waṣált <br> I arrived |  | wasálnā <br> we arrived |

C. Negation of past

The past tense is negated with L .

> I didn't arrive in Manama.
> ما وصلت إلى المنامة.

We didn't lose our suitcases.
ما ضيّعنا شنطنا.

He wasn't a leader.
ما كان زعــم.

## DRILL 8: CONJUGATION

a. Students read the forms in the above paradigm (وصل) aloud. Teacher repeats correctly for confirmation or self-correction by students.

أ. يتلو الطلاب تصريف الفعل (وصل) كما ورد في التمرين السابق، عّ يتلو الأستاذ التصريف نفسه
b. Teacher reads forms in paradigm aloud. Students repeat after teacher chorally and then individually. (This should be done firmly and rhythmically.)
ب. يتلو الأستاذ التصريف ثانية والطلاب يعيدون بعده بصورة جماعية أولاً ثَ فر يدة.
c. While looking at the paradigm, students conjugate the corresponding forms for Teacher repeats forms correctly for confirmation or self-correction by students.


## DRILL 9: COMPREHENSION

Listen to your teacher say the following sentences. Then give the English equivalent.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { اصغ إلى الأستاذ يردّد ابلمَل التالية، Fم اعط } \\
& \text { 0. } 0 \\
& 7 \text { و وصلت الملكة من لندن. } \\
& \text { V وصلت إلى العاصمة. وصن. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ع . ما وصلو ا إلى القاهوة. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## V. Predicate adjectives

Many equational sentences involve the use of an adjective as the predicate or comment part of the sentence, such as:

The president is famous.
الرئيس مشهور.

The city is important.
المدينة مهمّة.

You have already seen that adjectives agree with the nouns they modify. As you can see in the previous example, the adjectives in these types of sentences agree with the nouns in terms of number and gender but not in definiteness. It is the absence of the definite article that makes these adjectives predicates instead of just modifiers.
A. a famous president the famous president The president is famous.
B. an important city
the important city
The city is important.
المالمدئيس مشيس المشهور مهور

Note that only examples A3 and B3 are complete sentences. The others are nounadjective phrases.

## DRILL IO: MATCHING

Select the adjective that correctly completes the sentence and read the sentence aloud.


Examples
القاهرة ملينة كبيرة. البحرين بلد صغير.

## Adjectives

Sentences


i. The Red Sea is famous.
j. The Arab world is big.
VI. Colors

Color words are adjectives and follow the same agreement rules as other Arabic adjectives. The following chart shows the forms of basic color words in Arabic.

| pl. | f. | m |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| بيض | بَيْنِاء | أبْيْضِ | white |
| سود | سْوْدْ | أسْوْدِ | black |
| خُضْرِ | خَضْرِ | أخْضْرِ | green |
| صُفر | صنَراء | أصنْر) | yellow |
| حُرْرْ | حَمْرْ | أحْهِرْرِ | red |
| زُرْ | زَرْقّاء | أزْرْقْ | blue |

The basic set of color terms above is in a separate grammatical category of its own because the items inflect in a special way. Other kinds of color words are:
A. Nisba adjectives derived from names of things that have that color:

| brown <br> gray <br> orange <br> pink |  | from بُنّ "coffee beans" <br> from رَمـاد "ashes" from بُرْنقّال "orange" from وَرْد"rose" |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |

B. Names of colors borrowed from other languages:

| turquoise |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| beige |  |
| mauve | تر كواز |

## DRILL I2:TRANSLATION AND COMPLETION

Complete the following phrases with the correct color word.
املاُ الفراغ في العبارات التالية حــب المثالين التاليتن.

Examples

a. the Black Sea

b. the Blue Nile

c. the green book $\qquad$
d. the red notebook $\qquad$
e. the white paper $\qquad$
f. the Yellow River

g. the red pen $\qquad$ V القَم . V
h. the black chair


## DRILL I 3:TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences:

1. There's a book on the table.
2. There's a little book on the table.
3. There's a little black book on the table.
4. The island is famous.
5. The "White Sea" (Mediterranean) is very big.
6. The Red Sea and the Black Sea are in the Middle East.
7. The Nile is in Egypt.
8. The White Nile is in the Sudan.
9. The Blue Nile and the White Nile are in the Sudan.

## DRILL 14:TRANSFORMATION

التّمرين الرابع عشر: تحويل
Transform the following sentences according to the examples.
اعد تر كيب البهل في هذا التمر ين حسب الأمثلة الثلالة التالية.

## Examples

لون لون القلم الشنطة أبيض.


## SPEAKING ACTIVITY B

Goal: To use spoken Arabic for gathering information involving possessives and adjectives.
(1) Materials: None.

Procedure: Teacher asks students the colors and sizes of their briefcases and books. After asking all of this information orally, teacher then writes it on the board, pausing to be prompted by students, and occasionally making mistakes of fact which they correct.

Teacher then quizzes individuals on details of this information, ignoring or "failing to understand" linguistically incorrect answers, and awarding points for correct ones.
(2) Materials: Cuisenaire rods.

Procedure: Teacher gives each student two rods of different colors. These are designated as suitcases or as books. Proceed as above.

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY C

Goal:
To require and reward comprehension of spoken Arabic, including adjectives of size and color.
Materials: Assorted books, pens, and pencils.
Procedure: 1. Teacher sets up several contrasting situations, and then says (for example):
the big red book
the small red book
the large pen
the small pen on (top of) the green book, etc.


الكتاب الأحمر الصغير
القّم الكبير
القلم الصغير على الكتاب الأخضر الصغر

Students point, first as a group and then individually, to what the teacher describes.
2. The same configurations can be used for yes or no questions, and as things for students to describe. When a student describes something correctly, teacher points to it.

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY D

Goal:
Use of Arabic, including demonstratives and adjectives, to solve simple problems.
Materials: Assorted items, e.g., books, pens, pencils; two paper bags.
Procedure: Leader puts two of the same kind of item into each bag (two books, two pens) without letting others see them. Others ask questions about size and shape in order to guess the contents of the bag. Leader then takes items out of the bags and verifies. (Teacher is leader at first, then students take turns.)

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY E

Goal:
To practice using Arabic, including color adjectives, in order to solve simple problems.
Materials: A map on which countries are shown in contrasting solid colors.
Procedure: Leader thinks of a country and states what color it is, e.g., "This country is (green)." Others ask yes or no questions to try to determine which country the leader has in mind: "Is it west or east of Egypt?" etc. At first, teacher takes role of leader, then students do so.

## listeningtask

Listen to the conversation without looking at the Arabic script. There are some words in it you may not have heard before, but most of them should sound familiar.

First, listen for the gist of what's going on. Then listen more closely a couple of times to see just how much you can understand. Discuss your findings with other students in your class and compare notes. When you have done this, go over the conversation with your teacher and check your comprehension of the basic idea.

When you have accomplished this, then look at the written text and compare it to what you have heard. You may ask your teacher for meanings of words that you don't know, but it is a good idea to try to guess their meanings from the context first and then check to see if you are right.

استمع إلى الحديث المسجّل و كابك مغلق. في الحديث بعض الكلمات الجديدة عليك، غير أن معظمهم معروف عندك.

> حاول أن تعر ف محور الحديث، ثُ استمع إليه ثانية وثالثة هكزيد من التدقيق لترى مدى فهـك له. ابحث المو ضو ع مع زملائك طلاب صفلك، ثُ راجع أستاذك في ما فهمت من فكرة الموضو ع الأساسصة.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أخيرا افتح الكتاب وانظر إلى النص وقارن بينه وبين الــحـيل. حاول أو لا أن تخزر معنى } \\
& \text { الكلمات البديدة من القر ينة، ثم اطلب من أستاذك أن يدلك على ما مُ تمتطع معرفنه منها. }
\end{aligned}
$$



$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { صحيح. مش هنا! } \\
& \text { شوف. مكخن يكون داخل واحد من كتبك. } \\
& \text { آه نعم . . . مكن. دقيقة من فضلك . . . هنا . . . آه لا هذا مش هو. } \\
& \text { قلم أزرق! هذا قلمك؟ } \\
& \text { لا هذا مش قلمي. أفتكر أنه لواحد من طلابك. } \\
& \text { طيب انتظر ... وجدته. كان داخل الكتاب الأخضر }
\end{aligned}
$$

REVIEW DRILLS
DRILL I:TRANSFORMATION

Give the singular of the following words.
حوّل البمع إلى صيغة المفرد في ما يلي.
I ا. r r. أهار r r. أمريكان を
o
7
s. V

A

10. 1 جمهوريات 1 الـ مصريتن

Ir Ir
Ir عوا 1 .
ع ا ع مالك

## DRILL 2: DERIVATION

a. Derive nisba adjectives from the following nouns:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { منها في جملة: }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Y. Y . } \\
& \text { r. r. السودان } \\
& \text { ع . أوربا } \\
& \text { ه. ملك } \\
& \text { 7. } 7 \text {. بغداد } \\
& \text { V. . . جمهورية } \\
& \text {. . الجزائر } \\
& \text { 9. } 9 \text {. البصرة } \\
& \text { 01. القدس }
\end{aligned}
$$

b. Give the plural forms of the adjectives derived.
c. Use the nisba adjectives in sentences.

## DRILL 3: COMPLETION

التمرين الثالث: تكميل

Complete the sentences, using the words and phrases listed.
املأ الفراغ بالككمة أو العبارة المناسية.



$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { بلد في العالم العرب؟؟ } \\
& \text {. } \\
& \text { البحرين. } \\
& \text { r.r جربا جزيرة }
\end{aligned}
$$

وصلت عائلنهع . وصل إلى العاصمة و
وجدوها لي.
ه م الموظَفين ضيّعوا شنطي

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { قَم ضّعْع؟ } \\
& \text { v } \\
& \text { 1. . اعطيني دفترك } \\
& \text { 9. }
\end{aligned}
$$

البلدان العر بية تونس والمغرب ومصر. $\qquad$

# LESSON NINE <br>  <br> <br> Getting Acquainted 

 <br> <br> Getting Acquainted}

## OVERVIEW

In this lesson, Foreign Service Officer Mark Stanley, having found his luggage at the airport, is met and welcomed by an employee of the U.S. embassy and has a brief introductory conversation with her.

Aside from an exchange of information, the dialogue involves the use of a number of essential courtesy expressions that are customary in such a situation and are important elements of spoken Arabic discourse. Since the dialogue is long, it may be best to learn it in two parts.

## GRAMMAR POINTS

I. Subject pronouns
II. Pronouns as objects of prepositions
III. مَع "To have (with)"
IV. Past tense of عِنْ
V. Review of past tense verbs
VI. Summary of stress rules

## $\delta$ matrix dialogue <br> $\int$ basic dialogue

- 

الحوار الأساسي


## English version

1. Salwa: Excuse me, are you Mr. Mark Stanley?
2. Mark: Yes, I am (I'm Mark). Are you from the American embassy?
3. Salwa: Yes. My name is Salwa Abu Ghazala.
4. Mark: Pleased to meet you, Miss Salwa.
5. Salwa: The pleasure is mine. How are you?
6. Mark: Fine, thanks. How are you?
7. Salwa: Fine, thanks. Welcome to Jordan.
8. Mark: Thank you.
9. Salwa: I hope your trip was comfortable.
10. Mark: I had a slight problem. I lost my suitcase, but they found it for me.
11. Salwa: Thank goodness! When did your plane arrive? I didn't hear any announcement.
12. Mark: We arrived about 20 minutes ago.
13. Salwa: You traveled from New York, didn't you? How was the trip?
14. Mark: Yes, I traveled from New York. The trip wasn't bad, but I'm a little tired.
15. Salwa: Glad you arrived safe and sound. ("Praise be to God for your safety.")
16. Mark: Thanks. ("May God make you safe.") Do you have a car with you?
17. Salwa: Yes, I do. The embassy car is here. Please (come) with me.
18. Mark: Okay. Is the embassy far from the airport?
19. Salwa: No, not very . . half an hour by car.

| $\delta$ vocabulary |  |  | المفودات |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| you (formal, polite) | حَضْرَتك | welcome (to a place) |  |
| ("your presence") |  | response to أهلا وسهلا | أَهالِ وَسْهِالا |
| I | أنا |  | بيك |
| Embassy | سِفِارَهّ (-ات) | trip | سَفْرَهُ (-ات) |
| Pleased to meet you. | تَشَرَّفّنا | comfortable; pleasant | مريح |
| ("We are honored.") |  | I had | كان عِنْدي |
| Miss | آنسة | they found | وَجَدوا |
| The pleasure is mine. | الشّرّفِف لنا | they found it (f.) | وَجَدوها |
| ("The honor is ours.") |  | for; to | , |
| how | كَيْن | for me |  |
| condition, state | حال (أُحْوْال) | when (interrogative) | متى |
| How are you? | كيْف الحال؟ | airplane | طائِرَّة (-ات) |
| fine ("in goodness") | بخحِير | I heard | كِسِعْتِ |
| thank goodness | الحَحْمٌ لِّلِ. | I didn't hear | - |
| ("Praise be to God.") |  | announcement | إعْلان (-ات) |
| you (f.) | أُنْتِ | before; ago | قَبْل |


| twenty | عِشْرِ | with | C |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| approximately; about | تَقريباً | you have (with you) | رُّك |
| you (m.) | أَنْ | I have (with me) | معي |
| you traveled | سافرْت | car | سِيْارَهِ |
| thus; so | هَهْك | here | هُنا |
| Right? Not so? | مسُ هِّكْ | please (offering) | تَفِّنّا |
| I traveled | سافرْتِ | far, distant | بعيد |
| not bad; okay | مِش بِّالِّ | from, away from; | عن |
| tired | تَعْبان (-ين) | about (concerning) |  |
| a little bit; somewhat | \% | airport | مُطار (-ات) |
| "Thank God for your | الْحَمْنُ لِّلِّ | much, many, a lot; very | كثّير (كَثار) |
| safety." |  | half (also spelled نصف:) | نصن |
| response: "May God | الله | hour; clock; wristwatch | ساعَة (-ات) |
| make you safe." |  | by; with; by means of | ب |

## SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

| after; in (time) | بِعْد | news |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| after the trip | بِعْد السَّفَّهِّ | coffee |
| in an hour | بَعْد ساعَة | tea |
| near, close to | قَريب (مِن) | cup |
| new | جَديد (جُلُد) | teacher (m.) |
| (over) there; there is/are | هناك | teacher (f.) |
| page | صَفْحَة (-ات) | office |
| newspaper | جَريدَّ (جَرائِد) | passport |

مفر دات إضافية

شاي
فِنْتحان
مُدَرِّسِ (-ين)
مُلَرِّسَة (-ات)
مَكْتَبِ (مَكاتِب) (ان)
جَواز سَفِر (جَوازات سَفِر)

## VOCABULARY NOTES

## 1. تَفَضنَّل / مِنْ فَضْنَكِ

There are two expressions in Arabic that are translatable into English as "please," but these expressions serve two different functions. One of them (من فضلك) is used to request a favor or an action from someone else. The other (تَفَضَّهَّ) is used when you (the speaker) are offering a favor or action to someone else (e.g., opening a door for
someone, offering someone food). Each of these expressions has three forms, depending on whom is being addressed: masculine singular, feminine singular, and plural.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { مِنْ فَضْلُحمُمُ (pl.) } \\
& \text { Request "please" } \\
& \text { (f.) مِنْ فَضْبِك } \\
& \text { مِنْ فَضْكَك (m) } \\
& \text { Offering "please" } \\
& \text { تَفَضّْلوا (.) } \\
& \text { تَفْضَّكي (f.) } \\
& \text { تَفَضَّل (m.) }
\end{aligned}
$$

## 2. Formal "you"

In addition to the regular "you" pronouns (أنتَ، أنتِ، أنتو), Arabic has a more formal way of addressing persons who are not known to the speaker and/or to whom the speaker wants to accord particular courtesy (literally: "your presence"). This polite formal term of address has the following forms:

DRILL I: COMPLETION

Follow the procedure outlined in Drill 1, Lesson 8, for this completion drill.
اتّبع التعليمات المناصة بالتمرين الأول من الدرس الثامن.

Section a

$\qquad$
$\qquad$ 7
حاللك أنت؟ $\qquad$ ,
وسهاْ في الأردن. $\qquad$
$\qquad$ دan V
$\qquad$ . 1
اللّه كانت سفرتك $\qquad$ .9

ضّ $\qquad$
$\qquad$ ، لكن وجدوها لي. $\qquad$
وصك طائرتك؟ أنا ما $\qquad$ للّه. $\qquad$ .11
إعانان $\qquad$
$\qquad$
تقريباً. $\qquad$
$\qquad$ r Ir و I و من نيو يورك، مش $\qquad$ ir ¢ $\qquad$ ؟ كيف كانت $\qquad$
. السفرة ما كانت $\qquad$
$\qquad$ \& 1 . نعم، سافرت

شوي. $\qquad$ ، لكن أنا $\qquad$ على السا(مة. $\qquad$ .10 سيّارْ؟ $\qquad$
$\qquad$ 17
هنا. تفضّل $\qquad$ سيّارة $\qquad$ . IV
 $\qquad$
$\qquad$ 111. طيّب. السفارة نصّ . . . $\qquad$ 6 $\qquad$ .19
بالسِّارة. $\qquad$

Section b
$\qquad$ عضرتك السيّد . . حـو $\qquad$ .1
$؟$

حضرنك من $\qquad$
$\qquad$ r أيوه،
$؟$ $\qquad$

آنسة سلوى. $\qquad$
$\qquad$ \&
? $\qquad$
$\qquad$ ه. الشرف
$\qquad$ المaد للّه. وكيف $\qquad$ .7
$\qquad$
$\qquad$ للّه. أهلا و $\qquad$ v

بك $\qquad$ 1
مريكة. $\qquad$
$\qquad$ 9. إن شاء اللّه

مشكلة صغيرة. $\qquad$ 1. وجدوها لي $\qquad$ شنطنّ، $\qquad$
طائرتك؟ أنا $\qquad$ ज. $\qquad$ 2-11 11
سمت أين إعلان! $\qquad$ عشرين دقيفة $\qquad$ ir ، مش هيك؟ كيف $\qquad$ r r r أنت سافرت من السفرة؟؟ $\qquad$
. $\qquad$ ع ا. نعم، سافرت من نيو يورك. ، لكـن أنا تعبان $\qquad$ 10. المدـ للّه على $؟$ $\qquad$ يسآْمك بعك $\qquad$ .17
$\qquad$ السفارة هنا. $\qquad$ IV
! $\qquad$ بعيدة عن $\qquad$ 1111
$\qquad$ كثير . . . نص ساعة $\qquad$ 8. 19

## DRILL 2: SCRAMBLED DIALOGUE

Follow the procedure outlined in Lesson 8. Drill 2 for this completion drill.


أيوه، أنا مارك. حضرتك من السفارة الأمير كبة؟ أهلا بيك

أنت سافرت من نيو يورك، مش هيك؟ كيف كانت السفرة؟
إن شاء اللّه كانت سفرتك مريهة. الحمد للّه. أهلاً وسههلا في الأردن.

كان عندي مشككة صغيرة. ضّعت شنطيت، لكن وجدوها لي.
عفوا . . . حضرتك السيد مارك ستانلي؟

المهد للّه. متى وصلت طائرتك؟ أنا ما سمع أيتّ إعلان! اللله يسلمك. معك سيّارة؟
وصلنا قبل عشر ين دقيقة ثقريباً.
نعم. اسمي سلوى أبو غز الة.

نعم، سافرت من نيو يورك. السفرة ما كانت بطّالة. لكن أنا تعبان شوي.
نعم، سيّارة السـارة هنا. تفضّل هعي.
الشرف لنا. كيف الـال؟؟
لا، مش كثيّر . . . نص ساعة بالسيّارة.

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY A

Practice dialogue expansion with your teacher, following the directions of Speaking activity $A$ in Lesson 8.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

## I. Subject pronouns

Here is a chart of spoken Arabic subject pronouns:

| we | غن | I | أنا |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | you (m.) | أنت |
| you (pl.) | أنتو (أنتم) | you (f.) | أنت |
|  |  | he | هو |
| they | - | she | هي |

Subject pronouns serve often as subjects of equational sentences.

Examples

I'm from Washington.

> أنت أنت من واشودي؟ن. وين؟

He's Egyptian.
She's at the embassy.
We are employees.
Are you (pl.) Kuwaitis?
They are our teachers.

هو مصري.
هي في السفارة.
نـن موظّفين.
أنتو كو يتيين؟
هـم مدرّسينا.

## DRILL 3: PRACTICE WITH SUBJECT PRONOUNS

a. Students read the forms in the paradigm aloud. Teacher repeats forms correctly for confirmation or self-correction by students.
b. Teacher reads forms in the paradigm aloud. Students repeat after teacher chorally and then individually until they control the whole set of eight pronouns.
c. Lay out Cuisenaire rods in the form of the paradigm, with different colors and configurations for each pronoun. Teacher repeats correctly for verification, then teacher quizzes students by pointing at the rods.
d. Teacher gives short, equational sentences using singular pronouns. Students transform them into appropriate plural form.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ب. يتلو الأستاذ الضمائر، والطلاب يعيدون بعله بصورة جماعية أولاً عّ فردية. } \\
& \text { ج. يستعمل الطلاب القطع المخــــة الملوّنة حــب إرشاد الأستاذ. } \\
& \text { د. يقول الأستاذ جملاُ اسمية قصيرة حتعحلًا فيها ضمائر مغردة. والطلاب بیوّوها إلى ضمائر جمع. } \\
& \text { Examples } \\
& \text { 1. Ism an American. } \\
& \text { We are Americans. } \\
& \text { 2. You (m.) are Yemeni. } \\
& \text { You (pl.) are Yemenis. } \\
& \text { 3. He's an Arab. } \\
& \text { r. هو عربي. } \\
& \text { They're Arabs. هم عرب. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 4: ORAL TRANSLATION

a. Translate the following sentences into Arabic. Try to do them as rapidly as possible.
أ. ترجم ابجمل التالية إلى اللغة العربية، وحاول أن تفعل ذلك بأقصى ما بككن من السرعة.

1. We're not Arabs, we're Americans.
2. I'm not very tired, but she is (tired).
3. You're (m.) from Damascus, aren't you?
4. They are Saudis from Dhahran.
5. He's the president of the republic.
6. Maybe they are at the airport.
7. She's the president of the republic.
8. I'm from the American Embassy.
9. Is he a student here?
10. Are you (f.) an employee here?
b. Do the translation drill again, this time changing the singular pronouns to plural, and plural to singular. Make any necessary changes in the sentences.

ب. أعد ترجمة الجمل عوّلاً المفرد إلى جمع وابلمع إلى مفرد ومراعياً ما يستلزم هذا التحويل من تغير ات في الجمل.
II. Pronouns as objects of prepositions

Object pronouns occur in the form of suffixes attached to prepositions and verbs. These suffixes are almost identical in form to the possessive pronoun suffixes.

## Object pronouns



[^0]
## A. Prepositions

Twelve prepositions have been introduced so far:

| by; with; in | ! | to; towards |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| to; for; belonging to | $\checkmark$ | on; upon |
| in; at | بين | between; among* |
| from; of | Le | after* |
| from; away from; about | قَبْل | before* |
| with | عِنْ | at* |

*Technically, in Arabic grammatical theory, these are considered locative adverbs rather than prepositions; for the purposes of this text, however, they are grouped with prepositions.

Arabic prepositions are usually short, small words, consisting of one to three letters. Some of them take special forms when a pronoun object is suffixed, as follows:

1. ب "by," "at," "in," "with"

In spoken Arabic, $ب$ often lengthens the vowel $i$ to $\bar{i}$ when followed by a pronoun.

| بينا | بي |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | بيك |
| بيكُم | * |
|  | *** |
| بيهُم | بيها |

*When preceded by a vowel, the second person feminine singular suffix changes from -ik to $-k i$.
${ }^{* *}$ When preceded by a vowel, the $-u h$ suffix changes to $-h$.
2. J "to," "for"

The vowel on $ل$ can vary, depending on the suffix. Also, $J$ is sometimes preceded by an $i$ sound, spelled $!$. You will probably hear it both ways.

| كَنا or إْنا | (إ) لي |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | (إ) كَ |
| لَكُم or إلْكُم | (إ) لك |
|  | d (إ) |
| لَهُم or إلْهُم | لَها or |

3. في "in," "at"

The long vowel $\bar{\imath}$ influences some of the suffixes, particularly the first person singular.

4. عِن and عَن "from"

These two words double the $n$ sound when the $n$ is followed directly by a vowel or by another $n$ :


## 5. إلى and "on" and "to"

These two words change their final $\bar{a}$ sound to $a y$ (most often pronounced $\bar{e}$ ) when followed by a pronoun suffix.


The triliteral prepositions (e.g., قبل ,بعد) generally don’t undergo phonological changes with suffixes.

## DRILL 5: PRONUNCIATION

a. Teacher reads through the preposition paradigms aloud while students listen.
b. Teacher reads paradigms aloud for students to repeat chorally, and then individually.
c. Students read aloud the forms in the paradigms. Teacher repeats the forms correctly for self-confirmation by students.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أ. يقر أ الأستاذ جلول الضمائر والطلاب يصغون. } \\
& \text { ب. يقرأ الأستاذ جدول الضمائر والطلاب يعيدون بعده، جماعياً أولاً عَ فردياً. } \\
& \text { ج. يقرأ الطلاب جدول الضمائر والأستاذ يعيد مصحّحاً. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 6:TRANSFORMATION

Read the following sentences aloud as they are; then change the underlined words to a pronoun and read the sentence again aloud.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { إقر أ الجمل التالية كما هي، ثم حوّل ما تحته خط فيها إلى ضمير وأعد قراءةًا. } \\
& \text { ا . وصلنا قبل الملك. } \\
& \text { r. سافرت مع زوجيَ. } \\
& \text { r. كانت في السفارة. } \\
& \text { ع. أهالا وسهالا بالسيد ستانلي } \\
& \text { م ه هذي الصورة من عمّد. } \\
& \text { 7. ما سمعنا أي إعلان عن الرئيس. } \\
& \text { وجاو الشنطة لمار . V } \\
& \text { 1. متى وصلتوا إلى المطار؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 9. كتابي كان على الطاولة. } \\
& \text {. } \\
& \text { 11. السفارة بعيدة عن الطار . }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 7: QUESTION AND ANSWER

Answer the following questions, using the word in parentheses in your reply.
جاوب الأسئلة التالية مـتعملا في جوابك الكلمات الواردة بين قوسين.

## Examples

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { مين كان معك؟ (سليم) - سلبم كان معي } \\
& \text { - هذا الدفتر إلي. } \\
& \text { لمين الدفتر؟ (أنا) } \\
& \text { (أنا) } \\
& \text { (ناطمة) } \\
& \text { (أنا وأنت) } \\
& \text { ا. مين كان معكم؟ } \\
& \text { r. r. من مين الصورة؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

> \& \& . لمين الساءة؟
> • ـ مـين سافر معك؟
> 7. بين مين ومين كان الموار؟
III.
"to have (with)" مَعَ "to

The preposition مع "with" is used to indicate accompaniment:

We traveled with them.
سافرنا معهم.

He was with the president.
كان مع الرئيس.

It can also be used to indicate immediate (but possibly temporary) possession, that is, to have something "with" or "on" you. By saying:

Do you have a car (with you)?
معك سيّارة؟

Mark wants to know if Salwa has brought a car along with her, not whether or not she actually owns a car. Used in this sense, $\boldsymbol{\sim}$ can only refer to concrete items. It could not be used, for instance, to say "I have a problem." In such an instance, عند would have to be used.

## IV. Past tense of عِنْ

The "have" expression عند + pronoun suffix is made past by placing the word كان before it. Although كان is a verb, it does not conjugate when used with عند. It remains كان . The "have with" expression, using pronoun suffix, is made past in the same way.

## Examples

أمثلة

I had a problem.
We had a suitcase but we lost it.
Did you have much time?
I had a car (with me).
We had a car (with us).

These expressions are both negated with .

I don't have a pen with me.
I didn't have a pen with me.
I didn't have a problem.


DRILL 8: ORALTRANSLATION

Use er or as appropriate.


1. He had the passports with him.
2. We have a lot of suitcases with us.
3. They didn't have many problems.
4. Do you (m.) have your watch with you?
5. I had a green car, but now I have a white one.
6. Did you (f.) have a suitcase like this with you?
7. Did she have the information?
8. The embassy is far away and I don't have my car with me.
9. We only have three suitcases with us.
10. We had your (pl.) car and you had hers.
11. How many newspapers do you (m.) have with you?
12. Did you (f.) have any problems?
13. Do you (pl.) have the embassy car with you?
14. Did you (m.) have much time?
15. I had my black suitcase with me.

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY B

Goal:
To seek and give information about immediate possession.
Materials: Cuisenaire rods.
Procedure: 1. Teacher opens box of colored Cuisenaire rods and each student takes a certain number of them (1-10), without showing them to other students or the teacher.
2. Teacher then asks how many rods each has (using عند or or and student answers (using عند $ع$ ) or ${ }^{\text {a }}$. Teacher then asks student $B$ how many rods student $A$ has and student $B$ responds. Teacher then asks the same of student $B$, student $B$
responds and teacher asks student C how many rods student $B$ has, and so on around the room.
3. Teacher then asks students in pairs how many rods they have
 asks another student about student A + student B, along the lines of 2 above.
4. Students put rods into box and teacher quizzes them about how many rods they had (كان عندك, كان معك) along the same lines of step 2, using 1st, 2nd \& 3rd persons, as well as singular and plural.
V. Review of past tense verbs

The following verbs have appeared in Lessons 8 and 9.

| to travel | سافر | to find | وجد |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| to hear | سمع | to arrive | وصل |
| to lose | ضّيّع |  |  |

$\bigcirc$ DRILL 9: PAST TENSE CONJUGATION
REVIEW
a. Teacher conjugates وصل and as students listen. (This should be done rhythmically and firmly.)
أ. يصرّف الأستاذ الفعلين وصل وضيّع، والطلاب يصغون.
b. Teacher conjugates $و$ سافر , ومع and having students repeat in unison.
ب. يصرّف الأستاذ الأفعال سافر وسمع ووجد، والطلاب يعيدون بعده.
c. Teacher adds subject pronouns to paradigm, e.g.:
ع. يضيف الأستاذ ضمآثرالرفع كما في البدول التالي:

d. Teacher then just says pronouns and asks students to give equivalent verb form, e.g.: د. يقول الأستاذ الضمائر فقط ويطلب من الطلاب أن يعطوا الفعل المناسب كما في المثالين التاليين:


Go through سافر, وجا and تما in the same way.
يستعمل الأستاذ الأفعال: سافر، و جال، سمع بنفس الطريقة.
e. Teacher has students conjugate verbs individually, going around the room in order, and cueing the students with pronouns.
هـ-. يطلب الأستاذ من الطلاب أن يصرّفو الأفعال فردياً معطيًاً إياهم الضمائر.

## DRILL 10: COMPLETION ANDTRANSLATION

Complete the following sentences, using an appropriate form of one of the five verbs you have been practicing. Each sentence can be completed correctly in more than just one way, so students should find several possible alternatives. Then translate the sentences into English.
1
$\qquad$ r قلمي. O $\square \quad .7$
$\qquad$
A
$\qquad$
-
11. ــ الأخبار على الراديو.
الجواب الأول.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { امالٔ الفر اغ في ابلجمل التالية بالفعل المنابـب من الأفعال الخمــة التي تّمرّن عليها الآن، علماً بأن }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ابلمل إلى الإنكليزية. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## VI. Summary of word stress rules

The stress shift you have observed when attaching pronoun suffixes to nouns and when conjugating verbs exemplifies the basic stress rule for Formal Spoken Arabic. The rule has two parts, as follows:

1. Stress is on the final syllable if that syllable consists of:

$$
\mathrm{C} V \mathrm{~V} \text { C or C V C C }
$$

where C stands for any consonant, V stands for a short vowel, and VV stands for a long vowel, e.g.,

| ka-biir | كبير |
| :---: | :---: |
| (CV-CVVC) |  |
| wa-salit | وصلت |
| (CV-CVCC) |  |
| mu-dar-ri-siín | مدرّسين |
| (CV-CVC-CV-CVVC) |  |
| si-faa-ráat | سفارات |
| (CV-CVV-CVVC) |  |

2. a. If the final syllable is not stressed, stress will be on the second-to-last syllable if that syllable consists of:

| C V C or CVV or C VV C | or C V C C |
| :--- | :--- |
| wa-ṣal-tu |  |
| (CV-CVC-CVV) |  |
| ma-dií-na |  |
| (CV-CVV-CV) |  |
| mu-dar-ri-sáát-haa |  |
| (CV-CVC-CV-CVVC-CVV) |  |

```
wa-jadt-hum (CV-CVCC-CVC)
```

b. If a word is not stressed on the final or second-to-last syllable, stress is on the third-to-last, no matter what its configuration, e.g.:

| ${ }^{c} \boldsymbol{a} \boldsymbol{a}-{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{i}-\mathrm{l} \mathrm{l}^{\text {a }}$ | عائلة |
| :---: | :---: |
| (CVV-CV-CV) |  |
| mád-ra-sa | مدرسة |
| (CVC-CV-CV) |  |
| wä-ṣa-luu | وصلوا |
| (CV-CV-CVV) |  |
| mu-sáa- ${ }^{\text {c }}$ a-da | مساعدة |
| (CV-CVV-CV-CV) |  |

Stress does not fall farther back than the third syllable from the end of a word.

Pronounce the following words with correct stress.
الفظ الكلمات التالية بالنبرة الصحيحة.

| r . 1 r | 1 |
| :---: | :---: |
| Ir . | Y |
| 1 1 ¢ | r r. |
| 11 1 . | ¢ ع . |
| 7 17 | ص.0 |
| أ. 1 l | 7 7 . 7 \% |
| 11. 1 . أسود | 人 V |
| 19 19 | 1 . |
| , r. | 9. 9 وصلت |
| I | . 1. |

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY C

Goal:
To describe situations using the past tense.
Materials: Cuisenaire rods.
Procedure: 1. With rods, teacher and students build replicas of two airports. One is Amman, the other is New York. One rod is used to represent the airplane, another for Mark, another for Salwa, and one more for Mark's suitcase.
2. Teacher asks students to describe Mark's trip from New York to Amman, as follows:

- Mark arrived at the airport in New York by car.
- He had only one suitcase with him. It was blue.
- Mark traveled from New York to Amman by plane.
- He arrived at the Amman airport.
- But he lost his suitcase.
- Then, they found it for him.
- Salwa arrived at the Amman airport by embassy car.
- She didn't hear the announcement.
- But she found Mark.
- He was tired from his trip.

3. Teacher then has each student describe the journey as if each had made it, but with slight changes, e.g.:

- I arrived at the Chicago airport.
- I had two suitcases with me.
- I traveled by plane to Cairo.
- I found one suitcase but I didn't find one other (the second one).
- Salwa heard the announcement and found me at the airport.
- I wasn't very tired. The trip was very comfortable.


## REVIEW DRILLS

## DRILL I: QUESTION AND ANSWER

Answer the following questions:

## DRILL 2:TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Arabic.
r. وين السفارة الأمير كية؟
ع. شو حجم شنطة مارك؟
ترجم ابحمل التالية إلى العربية.
 Y ا Y شو لون سيّارة السفارْْ؟
التمرين الثاي:: تر:جة
O.

Y . مين رئيس بلدك؟ V . V معك سيّارة؟
 9. 9 أنت بن وين؟

> 11. كم طاولة في صغكم؟


Y I . شو لون سيّارة السفارْم؟

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

r. ا. بت وصصل ماركّ

1. I don't have a problem.
2. We have a new government.
3. His passport was in the office.
4. Thanks for your help.
5. Is this chair comfortable?
6. Which river is that?
7. Which office is she in?
8. Is your (f.) car close by?
9. It seems I don't have a pen with me. Do you (f.) have one?
10. Nothing serious, I hope.
11. Do you (m.) have the information?

## LESSON TEN

## الدرس العاشر

## Establishing Common Ground

## OVERVIEW

In the framework of an informal discussion, Mark and Salwa begin to establish some common ground, discussing and sharing experiences in simple language on conventional topics such as travel and the weather. Since these subjects will consistently recur in conversations with native speakers of Arabic and are essential preliminaries to more substantial dialogue, it is important to develop ease and skill in handling these interactions to build a foundation for further discussion. Take this opportunity to develop some routines of your own that describe your previous experiences and allow you to interact confidently and spontaneously on these topics. Use the speaking and listening exercises to practice and expand your repertoire of language skills.

## GRAMMAR POINTS

I. Hollow verbs
II. Numbers
III. Counting
IV. Agreement for plural nouns
V. Agreement for dued nouns

## $\delta$ matrix dialogue

$\delta$ basic dialogue
-

ا ـ سلوى: كنت في الشرق الأوسط من قبل، يا سيّد مارك؟
Y. r. مارك:

§ . مارك: كنت في مصر لمدّة شهر وبعدين رحت إلى لبنان وسوريا لمدّة قصيرة. ه. سلوى: 7. مارك: طلـا طبعاً شثفت الأهرام و سقت مع صديق إلى الأقصر وشفنا بعض الآثار الفرعونية هناك. وزرنا متاحف كمان V سلوى: V الآثار المصرية مُتعة جدّاً ولاتنسى أنه عندنا آثار مُتعة هنا في الأردن كمان، مثل البتراء وجرش.

9. سلوى: ها كنت هنا قبل سنتين؟ آه! مُكن كنت مع وزير الخار جية الأميركي لمّا زار الملك حسين وبعض الرؤ ساء العرب الآلخرين.




## English version

1. Salwa: Have you been in the Middle East previously, Mark?
2. Mark: Yes. I visited some Arab countries when I was a college student ten years ago.
3. Salwa: Really? Which countries did you visit?
4. Mark: I was in Egypt for a month. Then I went to Lebanon and Syria for a short time.
5. Salwa: When you were in Egypt did you see the pyramids and the other ruins?
6. Mark: Of course. I saw the pyramids and I drove with a friend to Luxor and we saw some pharaonic ruins there. We also visited museums.
7. Salwa: Egyptian ruins are very interesting, but we have interesting antiquities here in Jordan, too, like Petra and Jerash.
8. Mark: So I've heard. I was in Jordan two years ago, but for a short timeonly three days.
9. Salwa: You were here two years ago. Ah! Perhaps you were here with the American secretary of state when he visited King Hussein and some other Arab heads of state.
10. Mark: Yes. I was with him. We were in Amman for two days and we went to Aqaba for one day.
11. Salwa: You went to Aqaba! That region is very nice-I was there with my family two weeks ago and the weather was splendid.
12. Mark: Excuse me, what does the word $r \bar{a}^{\top} i^{c}$ mean? I don't understand.
13. Salwa: Oh, it means very good, very nice.
14. Mark: Ah, now I understand. Thanks.
15. Salwa: Don't mention it.

## So vocabulary

| عاشِر | for a period of (+ noun) | ) لِمُدّةّة |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| كُنْتِ | month | شَهْرْ (أشْهُر، شُهور) |
| مِنْ قَبْلِ | I went | رحت |
| زُرْت | short | قصرير |
| بَعْضِ | you (m.) saw | شُفت |
| لِّنّا | the pyramids | الأكهرْ امٌ |
| كُنْ | ruins; antiquities (pl.) | آثار |
| جامِعَه (-ات) | historical | تاريخي |
| ستّهة (سنين، سنّوات) | other (f.) | ى |
| صَحيح | naturally; of course |  |
| e) | I saw | شُفتِ |
| زُرْت | I drove | سِّق |
| مُلَّة | friend (m.) | صديق (أَصْدِقاء) |


| Luxor | الألُقْصر | two days | يوْمَنْنِ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| we saw | شُفنّا | we went | رُحْنا |
| pharaonic | فِرْعوني | you (pl.) went | رُحْتوا |
| we visited | زرُرنا | region, area | مِنْطقة (مَناطِق) |
| museum | مَتْحِفِ (مَّاحف) | nice, pretty; sweet | حُلو (-ين) |
| interesting (about things) | كُمْتِعْ | week | أُسبْوِ ع (أُسابِع) |
| don't forget | لا تَنْسى | two weeks | أُسْبَوعَّنْ |
| very | جدّا | the weather | الطقس |
| Petra | الْبَّرْ | splendid | رإِع |
| Jerash | ركر | meaning | مَعْنى (مَعاني) |
| two years | سنتّيّنِّ | word | كِلمَهِ (-ات) |
| day | يَوْمِ (آيّام) | I understood | فههْ |
| minister (of state) | وَزير (وزّرَاء) | nice | لُطِف (لطفاء) |
| foreign minister; | وزَير الْحارجيَّة | good | كُوِيِّ (-ين) |
| secretary of state |  | Don't mention it. | لا شُكرعِكى واجِ |
| he visited | زار | (response to 1 ) |  |
| others; other (pl.) | آخَرين | ("There is no |  |
| we were | كنّا | thanking for a duty.") |  |


| $\int$ SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY |  |  | مفردات إضافية |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| friend (f.) | صَديقَة (-ات) | snow | ثُلْج |
| sentence | جُمْلَة (جُمَل) | hot |  |
| other (m.) | آخخر (-ين) | cold (adjective) | بار2 |
| long; tall | طو يل (طِوال) | moderate | مُعْتُبِلِ |
| sun | الثَّمُّهِ | temperature ("degree | دَرْجَة الْحَرارَهِ |
| sunny | مُشْمِس | of heat") |  |
| rain | مُطرِ | storm | عاصِفة (عَوْفِ) |
| rainy | مُمْطِ | number, numeral |  |
| clouds | غيوم |  | (أُرْقام) |
| cloudy | غائِم | zero | صفِ |
| air; atmosphere | جوّ | under, below | تَحْتْ |
| humidity | رُطوبَ | above, over | فَوْقِ |
| humid | رُطِب |  |  |

## VOCABULARY NOTES

## I. بَعْض

The word بَعْض means "some" or "some of" and is generally followed by a definite noun or a pronoun, e.g.:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { some Arab countries } \\
& \text { some Arab heads of state } \\
& \text { some of them }
\end{aligned}
$$

## 2. لَّمّا

The word لَمّا means "when" or "at the time that." Unlike or or or it is not a question word. It is used to make a statement about "the time when," e.g.:
when I was in Egypt . . .
when he visited King Hussein . . .
when I was a student at the university . . .

DRILL I: COMPLETION
التمرين الأول: تكميل
Follow the procedure outlined in Lesson 8.


6 شُفت الأهرام $\qquad$ - ملوى: لـّا كنت في التاريخية الأخرى؟ $\qquad$ ,
$\qquad$ الأهرام وسقت $\qquad$ . 7 . مارك: طبعاً. هناك. $\qquad$ !إلى الأقصر وشفنا بعض الآثار متاحف كمان. $\qquad$ ,
جدّا ولاتنسى أنه عندنا $\qquad$ V . سلوى: الآثار المصرية
$\qquad$ كمتعة هنا يف الأردن كمان، مثل $\qquad$

قبل $\qquad$ سمع. أنا كـت في $\qquad$ ـ
$\qquad$ - بس نالانة $\qquad$ سنتين لكن ملدّة ك $\qquad$

ح $\qquad$ المارجية الأميركي لّا زار $\qquad$ الآخرين. $\qquad$ وبعض الرؤساء كنّا في عمّان يومين. $\qquad$ . إلى العقبة ليوم واحد. $\qquad$ ,
حلوة كيّر! أنا كـت هناك مع $\qquad$ I! الوى: رحتو! إلى العقبة| هذي
$\qquad$ قبل أسبوعين والطقس كان $\qquad$ كلمة 》رائع"؟ $\qquad$ r. بارك: عفواً-شو

جـدًّ $\qquad$ ... . . . . . .
. $\qquad$

على واجب. $\qquad$ 10. سلوى: لا 1 : 1 عار

DRILL 2: SCRAMBLED DIALOGUE

Follow the procedure outlined in Lesson 8, Drill 2.
اتّبع التعليمات الواردة في الدرس الثامن.

لا شكر على واحب.
أيوه. كنت معه. كنّا في عمّان يومين ورحنا إلى العقبة ليوم واحد. $\qquad$ عفوأ-شو بعن كلدة »رائع"؟ ما فهـت $\qquad$ كـت في مصر لمدّة شهر وبعدين رحت إلى لبنان وسوريا لمدّة قصيرة. $\qquad$ يعين . . . كويّس جدّاً لّا كن في مصر، شفت الأهرام والآثار التاريخية الأخرى؟ صصيح؟ أي بلاب زرت؟
طبعاً. شفت الأهرام وسقت مع صديق إلى الأقصر وشفنا بعض الآثار الفرعونية هناك. وزرنا متاحف كمان.

هيك سمعت. أنا كنت في الأردن قبل منتين لكن لمدّة قصيرةَ-بس ثّلانة آيام. $\qquad$ الآثار المصرية متعة جدًّا ولاتنسى أنه عندنا آثار مْتعة هنا في الأردن كمان، مثل البتراء وجرش. كنت في الشرق الأوسط من قبل، يا سبّد مارك؟ $\qquad$
 وبعض الرؤساء العرب الآخرين.

رحتوا إلى العقبة! هذي المنطقة حلوة كثير! أنا كن هناك مع عائلي قبل أسبوعين $\qquad$ والطقى كان رائع.

نحم. زرت بعض البلاد العر بية لما كذ طالب في الجامعة-قبل عشر سـين. $\qquad$
آ0 هالْ فهمت. شكراً.

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY A

Practice dialogue expansion with your teacher, following the directions of Speaking Activity A in Lesson 8.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

## I. Hollow verbs

In Lessons 8 and 9, certain verbs were introduced in their past tense form. All of these verbs are "regular" in the sense that when they are conjugated, the only part of the verb that changes is the suffix, or person marker, at the end of the verb. The "stem," or base part of the verb, stays the same.

In this lesson, another category of verbs is introduced. Unlike regular verbs, these verbs have a vowel as part of their stem, and that vowel undergoes certain changes in the past tense conjugation. Because they have this "weakness" in the middle of the stem, they are called "hollow" verbs.

The hollow verbs that have occurred so far are:

| to be | كان | to go | ران |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| to visit | to see | to become | سارق |
| to drive |  |  |  |

When hollow verbs are conjugated in the past tense, the long vowel $\bar{a}$ of the third person masculine singular (or citation) form changes to a short vowel in the second and first persons (singular and plural). This short vowel is either $u$ or $i$, depending on the verb.

The hollow verbs introduced in this lesson all have $u$ as their short vowel, but the verb صار (introduced in Lesson 5) has $i$ as the short vowel. Sample paradigms are as follows:

ST Hollow verbs-past tense


## DRILL 3: REPETITION AND RECITATION

التمرين الثالث: نكرار وتسميع
a. Teacher goes through conjugation of $\tau^{1}$, and $ص ا ر$ while students listen.
أ. يصرّف الأستاذ الفعلين راح وصار والطلاب يصغون.
b. Teacher goes through conjugation of $\mathbf{Z}^{1}$, and $\operatorname{l}$ again and students repeat after teacher.
ب. يصرّف الأستاذ الفعلين راح وصارثانية، والطلاب يعيدون بعده.
c. Teacher calls on students one at a time to recite conjugation of $\tau$, and
ج. يطلب الأستاذ من كلّ طالب تصريف هنين الفعلين واحدأ واحداً.
d. Teacher repeats procedure for ,شاق ,شاف, كان, and
د. تعاد العملية نفسها مع الأفعال: شاف، كان، زار، ساق.

DRILL 4: CONJUGATION

Using the following short sentences, conjugate the verb in all persons.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { صرّف الأفعال في المهل التالية مع كل الضـائر } \\
& \text { 1. كان الـ الطت الطائرة. } \\
& \text { r r راح إلى العقَبة. } \\
& \text { r. r. زار المتحف. } \\
& \text { §. ش. شاف الإعلان. } \\
& \text { ○. } \\
& \text { 7. } 7 \text { صار وزير إير }
\end{aligned}
$$

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY B

Goal:
To practice giving and understanding past tense narrative.
Materials: None.
Procedure: 1. Teacher asks students to think of a trip they took which they can describe by answering the questions such as the following:

T: Have you visited the Middle East?
S: Yes, I have (visited the Middle East).
No, I haven't but I visited $\qquad$ .
T: How did you go?
S: I went by plane.
T: Which countries were you in?
S : I was in $\qquad$ .

T: Were you in the capital of $\qquad$ ?
S: Yes, I was there.
No, I wasn't there.
T: Did you see any antiquities there?
S: Yes, I saw $\qquad$ .

T: When were you there?
S: I was there $\qquad$ ago.
2. Teacher then narrates the story about the student (third person m. or f. singular), covering the same points, to the other students.
3. Teacher then asks other students questions about this student's trip.
4. Students ask teacher about his or her travels, using the same type of questions.
5. When students have had a chance to tell about their travels, teacher quizzes them as a group as to who did or saw what.
© II. Numbers

Multiples of ten are as follows:

| 20 | عِشْر ين |
| :---: | :---: |
| 30 | كُلآين |
| 40 | أَرْبُعِن |
| 50 | خَمْسْينِ |
| 60 | سِتّين |
| 70 | سَبْعِن |
| 80 | ثُمانين |
| 90 | رِّعْعِن |
| 100 | مئِة / مائة |
| 1,000 | أَلْف (آلافِ) |
| - 1,000,000 | مِلِيون (مَاهين) |

A. In numbers such as $25,37,89,54$ what is said in Arabic is "five and twenty," "seven and thirty," "nine and eighty," "four and fifty." *

| 25 | ro | خسسة وعشرين |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 37 | rv | سبعة وثلاثين |
| 89 | $\wedge 9$ | تسعة وثمانين |
| 54 | - \& | أربعة و ومّين |

B. When using 100 and above, the word (100) is used as follows:

| 150 | 10. | مئة وخمّمين |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 175 | IVo | مئة وخمسة و سبعين |
| 200 | r. | مئتين |
| 230 | rr. | مئتين وثّالّين |
| 500 | 0. | حمس مئة |
| 640 | 7 า。 | ستّ مئة وأربعين |

C. When using 1,000 and above, the word ألف (1000) comes first.

| 1,100 | 11.. | ألف ومئة |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1,540 | 10\%. | ألف وخمس مئة وأربعين |
| 1,898 | 1^91 | ألف وثمان مئة وثمانية وتسعين |
| 2,000 | Y... | ألفين |
| 2,222 | grry | ألفين ومئتين واثنين وعشرين |

D. The word ألف has a plural: Tالاف. The plural form is used after the numbers 3-10.

| 3,150 | 「10. | ثلاثة آلاف ومئة وخمين |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 5,420 | O§r. | خمسة آلاف آلافبع مئة وعشرين |
| 10,000 | 1.. | عشرة آلاف |
| 20,000 | $r$. | عشرين ألف |
| 100,000 | 1... | مئة ألف |

## DRILL 5: NUMBERS

a. Referring to Grammar note II, the teacher goes though list of numbers, reading them aloud. Students repeat after teacher:
أ. نعود إلى الملاحظة الثانية للقواعد وهنا يقرأ الأستاذ قائمة الأرقام والطالب يعيدون بعده.
b. The teacher goes through list again, and students repeat with books closed.
ب. يقرأ الأستاذ القائمة ثانية، والطلاب يعيدون بعاه و كتبهم هغلقة.
c. The teacher goes over compound numbers in notes $A, B, C$, and $D$, reading them aloud. Student.s listen.
ج. يقرأ الأستاذ أرقاماً من المالحظات A و B و C، والطلاب يصغون.
d. Students read numbers in notes $A, B, C$, and $D$. The teacher repeats the numbers correctly for confirmation or self-correction by students.
د. يقرأ الطلاب أرقاماً من الملاحظات نفسها، والأستاذ يعيد بعدهم مصحتحاً.

## DRILL 6: READING NUMBERS

Students are to read the following numbers out loud. Teacher will repeat correctly for confirmation by students.
يقرأ الطلاب الأرقام التالية، والأستاذ يعيد بعدهم عصتحاً.

| $1 . .1$ | 1.0 | r. | 10 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1777 | 111 | \&1 | rr |
| 1\&qr | r.\& | V7 | 11 |
| 1イVA | rry | r\& | VA |
| 1V^9 | r\&\% | 7r | $\wedge \vee$ |
| 19 r. | VIr | or | Ir |

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY C

Goal: To develop ease and fluency in saying and understanding compound numbers.
Materials: Some additional vocabulary words.
address
عِنْوْان (عَناوين)
apartment
شَقَة (شِقْقَ)
phone
تُليفون (-ات)
street
شُارِع (شَوارِع)

Procedure: 1. Teacher says three hypothetical phone numbers in Arabic, repeating each number twice. Students write down the numbers, then check with teacher to verify them.
2. Teacher asks students to give their phone numbers, in Arabic. Teacher repeats it for confirmation or self-correction by student. Other students take numbers down, then check with each other and with teacher to verify them.
3. Teacher then asks students to give their addresses, following the model the teacher provides.
4. Teacher then says five dates (years) in Arabic, for example: 1920, 1981, 1776, 1942, 1980. Each date is said three times. Students copy down what they hear and verify with teacher.
5. Teacher asks students to each give three significant dates, years only. Other students listen, copy down dates and verify them.

## III. Counting

Arabic has basically three "number" categories: singular, dual, and plural.

## A. Singular

The number one acts as an adjective. As such, it follows the noun it modifies and agrees with it in gender, e.g.,

```
وزير واحلد
```


## B. Dual

Two of anything is a category unto itself. In counting, the number two (اثنين) is not generally used; rather, a dual suffix (ين)) is attached to the noun.
وزيرين طائرتين

## C. Plural

Plural nouns are used when counting from 3 to 10 . Note that a masculine noun takes the feminine form of the number and a feminine noun takes the masculine form of the number.


This rule is not always strictly observed by native speakers. You may sometimes hear masculine numbers used with the masculine nouns, e.g.,:


## D. Counting above 10

When counting above 10 , the counted noun is singular; for example:

سبعة وعشرين وزير سبعة وعشرين طائرة
مئة وزير** مئة طائرة**
**The word مئة is pronounced mīt when it occurs before a noun.

## DRILL 7:TRANSLATION

Say the following in Arabic.

1. 12 weeks
2. 20 names
3. 10 days
4. 4 parts
5. 32 hours
6. 56 apartments
7. 100 words
8. 3 employees ( m )
9. 560 pages
10. 22 states
11. 16 chairs
12. 1,000 years
13. 2 cups
14. 6 houses
15. 5 universities
16. 9 offices
17. 79 families
18. 143 students (f.)
19. 7 countries
20. 8 leaders

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY D

Goal: To develop ease and fluency in counted items, including use of the plural when appropriate.
Materials: A map of the Arab world; some additional vocabulary words.
distance
مَسافة (-ات
kilometer كيلو منْ (-ات)
meter (أْتْر (أْمْار) (1)
mile ميل (أَمْيْال) مِّال

Procedure: 1. Using a map, teacher asks students to tell the distances between major cities in the Arab world (in miles or kilometers).
2. Teacher asks students how many hours it takes to go by plane or by car between their home town and Washington, or between major points in the United States.

## IV. Agreement for plural nouns

Plural nouns in Arabic fall into two semantic categories: human and nonhuman. Plural nouns that refer to human beings take plural agreement, whereas plural nouns that refer to nonhuman entities generally take feminine singular agreement.

## A. Human nouns

I saw some Arab heads (m.) of state.
These ministers (m.) are Saudi.
I saw some Egyptian students (f.).
These ministers (f.) are Syrians.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { شفت بعض الرؤساء العرب. } \\
& \text { هذول الوزراء سعوديين. } \\
& \text { شفت بعض الطالبات المصريات. } \\
& \text { هذول الوزيرات سوريات. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## B. Nonhuman nouns

I visited some Arab countries.
They have many problems.
These cities are important.
زندرت هنم هشضاكل البلاد العربية. بـية.

This rule for feminine singular agreement with nonhuman nouns is not strictly adhered to in spoken Arabic, and you may hear Arabs use plural agreement with certain nonhuman nouns. It is advisable to use feminine singular agreement, however, since it is generally appropriate for nonhuman nouns.

| DRILL 8:TRANSFORMATION | التمرين الثامن: تحويل |
| :---: | :---: |
| Change the following phrases from singular to plural, and translate them into English. |  |
|  |  |
|  | 1. المدينة اليمنية |
|  | r. Y. |
|  | r |
|  | ع . |
|  | ○. دولة شرقية |
| - | 7. 7 الشيخ الصبير |
|  | , V الصورة المهمّة |
|  | ^. . طائرة مريمة |

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 9. } 9 \text { السفرة القصيرة } \\
& \text { * } 1 \text {. } \\
& \text { 11. } 11 \text { صديقة لطيفة }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Ir ا } 1 \text { ورقة بيضاء }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 1 } 1 \text {. وزير لبناني }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 9: COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences:
أكمل الجمل التالية حــب المعى في الجمل الإنكليزية المقابلة لما.

1. These words are Arabic.
$\qquad$ الكلمات $\qquad$
2. We found the other suitcases.
$\qquad$
3. Those students (m.) are Americans.
$\qquad$ الططاب $\qquad$ r
4. The days are now short.
$\qquad$
5. We visited some interesting areas.
$\qquad$
6. Their friends are very nice.

$\qquad$
7. These cars are old.
$\qquad$
8. Some Arab countries are big and some (of them) are small.

9. There were a lot of problems with the plane.
.مع الطائرة.
$\qquad$ 9. 9 كان فيه مشاكل
10. Some important Arab ministers were in Cairo this week.
$\qquad$ في القاهرة $\qquad$ - . . كان بعض الوزراء

## DRILL IO: ORAL TRANSLATION

التمرين العاشر: ترجة شفوية

Translate the following sentences into Arabic.
ترجم الجمل التالية إلى اللغة العربية.

1. The students (m.) went to many Arab embassies.
2. We visited some famous cities in the Middle East.
3. They arrived with their Tunisian friends.
4. Those airplanes aren't American.
5. Now there are only three Arab kings.
6. There aren't many mountains in the U.A.E.
7. They were in Lebanon for many years.
8. Are the cars near here?
9. These regions are very important.
10. I had many Lebanese friends (f.) when I was a student in Beirut.
11. We didn't understand some of those long announcements.

## V. Agreement for dual nouns

In written Arabic, dual nouns are modified by a dual form of the adjective, and this is sometimes the case in spoken Arabic as well, e.g.,
رئيسين عربيين طائرتين عر بيتين

More often, however, the dual form of the adjective is avoided in spoken Arabic, and the plural form of the adjective used.
رئيسين عرب طائرتين عربيات

Sometimes, the plural noun is used, followed by the number two (اثنتين / اثنين) plus the plural form of the adjective.
رؤساء اثنين عرب طائرات ثنتين عربيات

The modification of the dual noun is one of the fuzzy areas of spoken Arabic, where standardization is difficult to establish because of lexical and regional differences. Do the following drills with your teacher and check with your teacher about what sounds most appropriate in the dual.

DRILL II:TRANSFORMATION
التمرين الحادي عشر: تحويل

Change the following singular phrases into the dual.
حوّل المفرد في ابجمل التالية إلى المثنى:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ملـينتين مصريات } \\
& \text { مدن ثنتين مصريات }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 1. جملة طويلة } \\
& \text { r. ب. بر كبير }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r. } \\
& \text { ع. الطالب الكويتي }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Y } 1 \text {. منطقة حلوة } \\
& \text { البلد الصغير .V }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 9. } 9 \\
& \text { • . . } \\
& \text { I } 11 \text { جبل قريب }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 12:TRANSFORMATION

التمرين الثاين عشر: تّويل
Change the following sentences into the dual.

هو شيخ مشهور
هم تيخين مشهورين
هم شيوخ أنين مشهور ين
ا . السفارة بهمة.
r. عندنا ششخكة كبيرهَ.
r. r. هذي جملة قصيرة.

ع . التحت بعيد عن المدينة.
○. ومل وزير آخر.
Y. 7 . كانت السفرة طويلة.

هي طالبة كويّة. . . .

9. 9 . زرنا جامعة مشهوررة.

- 1 . اليوم حلو كثير.


## 丹 LISTENING EXERCISE

a. Listen to the following narrative without looking at the text, and see how much you can understand. It provides information for you about names of days, months, and seasons in Arabic.

 آب، أيلول، تشُرين الأول، تشُرين الثاني، كانون الأون الؤرل.




أسماء فصول السنة مي: الربيع، الصـن، المريف، الثتاء.
b. Now look at the text while listening to it. Circle any words you don't know or cant identify. Can you guess their meaning from the context?
c. Go over the text with your teacher. Ask the teacher to identify any words you don't know.
d. Practice saying the names of the week, the months, and the seasons with your teacher:
e. Memorize the names of the seasons, months, and days. (Complete lists of the months of the solar and lunar calendars are in Appendix I.)

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY E

Goal:
To develop ease in discussing seasons, months, and the weather.
(1) Materials: None.

Procedure: 1. Teacher describes weather in his or her home town during different seasons of the year.
2. Students summarize what they understood from the teacher.
3. Students then each describe the weather in their home towns during different seasons of the year.
(2) Materials: 24 index cards, each with the name of a city or a month ( 12 cities, 12 months).
Procedure: 1. Teacher prepares cards and stacks months together in one pile and cities together in another pile.
2. Students pick a month and a city from each pile and describe the typical weather conditions, e.g.,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { برلين } \\
& \text { القاهرة تمّ تمّن } \\
& \text { باريس نـيسان }
\end{aligned}
$$

## REVIEW DRILLS

## DRILL I:TRANSFORMATION

Change the underlined words to pronouns:

التمرين الأول: تحويل

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 9. سقتوا ! إلى بيته؟ } \\
& \text { • . } \\
& \text { 11 ـ ها وجدت شُقّة. } \\
& \text { r r r ها هذي البحمل مش في الكتاب. } \\
& \text { Ir . } 1 \text { سافروا بالطائرة. } \\
& \text { عا 1. في الأسبوع سبعة آيام. } \\
& \text { 10. بعض الطالاب سافروا إلى البلد. } \\
& \text { 17. كانت الفناجين على الطاولة. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 2:TRANSLATION

التمرين الثاني: ترجة

Give the Arabic for the following:
ترجم ما يلي إلى العر بية:

1. We went to his office.
2. Our friends lost their suitcases.
3. I didn't find the street.
4. She visited her family for a short (period of) time.
5. He became president three years ago.
6. The distance between Cairo and Alexandria is not great.
7. The address of the White House is 1600 Pennsylvania Avenue.
8. These are my friends.
9. There are famous ruins on the island.
10. Haven't you (f.) visited the Arab world?

## DRILL 3:TRANSFORMATION

Change the second term of the construct to a pronoun.

Example


## LESSON ELEVEN



## Seeking and Giving Information

## OVERVIEW

The basic dialogue in this lesson centers around seeking and giving information (mostly about language study), and includes giving and responding to complements, expressing surprise, making and responding to a suggestion and to an expression of gratitude. You will find yourself involved in this sort of conversation many times once you arrive in the Arab world and this lesson allows you the opportunity to prepare for handling this and similar encounters.

## GRAMMAR POINTS

I. Verbal nouns
II. Demonstrative phrases
III. The present tense
IV. Pronoun objects of verbs
V. Arabic modal expressions
VI. حَتَّي "In order to, so (that), to"
VII. كل "All, the whole; every, each"

## B MATRIX DIALOGUE

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { BASIC DIALOGUE الحوار الأساسي }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { الفصحى بالإضافة إلى العامّية. } \\
& \text { ه. سلوى: يتعلّموا القر اءة واللكتابة والكالام؟ } \\
& \text { 7. } \\
& \text { (V } \\
& \text { ^. . . رك: طبعاً، هي مش لغة سهلة، ولكن مش صعبة كثير. لهذا السبب فيه برنامج متقدّم } \\
& \text { في تونس بالإضافة إلى البرنامج في واشنطن. } \\
& \text { 9. سلوى: } \\
& \text { • ا. رك رك درست اللغة الفرنسية في المدرسة الثانوية وفي البلامعة، لكن أعرف العربية }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 1 ا ا سلوى: } 1 \text { ب فعلا" }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { بطاقة، إن شاء الله. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## English version

1. Salwa: You speak Arabic well, Mark. Where did you study?
2. Mark: I studied Arabic at the Foreign Service Institute in Washington for ten months.
3. Salwa: Heavens! Only ten months! Tell me, that institute belongs to the State Department, doesn't it?
4. Mark: Yes, it does. At the institute, students usually study six hours every day, and they study classical (literary) Arabic as well as colloquial.
5. Salwa: They learn reading, writing, and speaking?
6. Mark: Yes, they study all that, and they can read, write, and speak in Arabic.
7. Salwa: But Arabic is very difficult for foreigners, isn't it?
8. Mark: Well, of course it's not an easy language, but it isn't extremely hard. For this reason there is an advanced program in Tunis in addition to the program inWashington.
9. Salwa: Do you know other foreign languages besides Arabic?
10. Mark: I studied French in high school and in college, but I know Arabic better than French.
11. Salwa: Really, you speak Arabic very well, and you seem to understand almost everything I say to you.
12. Mark: That's kind of you. I try, and I'm determined to improve.
13. Salwa: You have a golden opportunity to improve while you're in Jordan.
14. Mark: You're right. I have to practice as much as possible while I'm in this (good) country so that I can speak fluently (God willing).
15. Salwa: Practice is very important-true-and I can help you. We should always speak Arabic with each other.
16. Mark: Good idea! Let's do that. I'd appreciate it.

## vocabulary


addition
in addition to; besides
colloquial Arabic
in order to, until, so that
to be able
to learn
reading (noun)
writing (noun)
speaking (noun)
to read
to write
difficult, hard (for)
easy
for this reason; therefore
program; schedule
advanced
to know
French
school
secondary
better (than)
really; actually
thing
to understand
I say (it)
everything
That's nice of you.
عَرَف / يَعْرِف / مَعْرِفَة
فَرَنْسي (-ينَ)
مَدْرَسْةَ (مَدارس)
ثانوي


فِعْا
شَيْء (أَشْياء)
فَهُمْ / يَغْهَم / فَهْمْ
أَقْوُلُ
("That is of your kindness.")
to try حاوَل / يُحاول / مُححاوَلَة
determined, resolved مُصَمِّم (-ين) to improve, تَحسَّن / يَتَحَّن / تَحَسُن to get better
chance, occasion,

opportunity
golden
وَوْأَنْتي في الأُرْدُن
right (noun)
حَقّ (حُقوق)
You're right.
رَعَك حَقَّ.
to practice
تَمَرَّن / يَتَمرَّن / تَمرَُّن it is necessary (that)

لازم
as much as possible قَدْرُ الإنْكان
fluently بطاوقة
drill; practice تُمْرِين (تَمارين) to help, to $\quad$ ساعَد / يُساعِد / مُساعَدَةْ assist
always
دائِماً
together, with each other
idea, thought
مِكُرَّة (فِكرَر)
let's
to do; to make;
عَمِل / يَعْمَل / عَمْل to work
grateful, obliged
مَدْنْون (-ين)
I'm grateful to you (f). أَنا مَمْنون نك.

## $\delta$ sUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

morning
this morning

night (in general)
at night
(a) night
tonight
good night
noon
afternoon
this afternoon
evening
good evening

good evening (in response)
today
tomorrow
the day after tomorrow
yesterday the day after
yesterday
daytime (from sunrise to sunset) نَهار

## VOCABULARY NOTES

## I. Citation forms of verbs

The usual citation form for a verb is the third-person masculine singular past tense, e.g., قر أ "to read." This is the minimal or shortest form of the verb and is considered, for listing purposes, to be the most basic form.

Beginning with this lesson and for the rest of the text, verbs will be introduced in the vocabulary lists in the following manner: past tense/present tense/verbal noun. For example:

$$
\text { to read قَرَأ / يَقْرَأ / قِراءة } \text { كَتب / يَكْتُب / كِتابَة }
$$

Verbs should be memorized in this way-all three parts together-because not all verbs are predictable in the way they form the present tense and verbal noun. In addition, memorizing sets of patterns is the most efficient way of eventually mastering Arabic vocabulary and morphology.
2. يا سَلام

This expression is a mild oath that expresses surprise. It can be used on both happy and distressful occasions, meaning "How nice!" "Wow!" or "How awful!" "Good grief!"

## 3. " "while"

The particle $\boldsymbol{g}$, in addition to meaning "and," can also mean "while." It is used this way when the main action in a sentence is coordinated with another action or state of affairs, as in the following examples from the text.

You have a golden opportunity to improve while you're in Jordan.
عندك فرصة ذهبية حت تتحسن وأنت في الأردن.

I have to practice as much as possible while I'm in this country.
لازم اتمرن قدر الإمكان وأنا في هذا البلد.

## DIALOGUE MEMORIZATION

a. Teacher takes role of Salwa and students that of Mark. Teacher cues students with Salwa's lines and students respond in unison.
b. Teacher then gives Salwa's lines at random and students give appropriate responses.
c. Teacher again gives Salwa's lines and one student at a time gives Mark's line.
d. Teacher plays one full dialogue with each student.

## DIALOGUE VARIATION

a. Teacher and student go through dialogue. Teacher varies the lines slightly, keeping meaning consistent with original so students can respond with lines from dialogue.
b. Teacher and students rehearse dialogue, keeping general ideas, but teacher now alters lines more extensively so that students have to think of appropriate response.

## I. Verbal nouns

The verbal noun is the name of the action specified by a verb. In the following senthence from the basic dialogue, three verbal nouns are used: "reading," "writing," and "speaking."

Do they learn reading, writing, and speaking?
القر اءة و الكتابة و الكلام؟

Some other verbal nouns that have come up in this text so far are:


DRILL I:VOCABULARY EXPANSION

In the glossary, or in a dictionary, find the verbal nouns for the following verbs:


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. } 1 \\
& \text { j). r } \\
& \text { r. r. سافر } \\
& \text {. \& } \\
& \text { • } 0 \\
& 7
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 2: IDENTIFICATION ANDTRANSLATION

التمرين الثاي: تعرّن وتر.جة
Identity the verbal nouns in the following expressions, and then translate them into English.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { تعرّف ملى المصادر فيما يلي، ثُّ ترجم العبارات إلى الإنكليزية. } \\
& \text {. } 1
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { V }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 1. } \\
& \text { 9. } 9 \text {. } \\
& \text { •1 . معرفة اللغة }
\end{aligned}
$$

## II. Demonstrative phrases

Demonstrative phrases consist of "this" or "that" plus a noun, such as "this notebook," "that newspaper." In Arabic these phrases consist of the demonstrative pronoun plus a definite noun, so that what is said is literally, "this-the-notebook," "that-thenewspaper."


DRILL 3: COMPLETION
التمرين الثالث: تكميل

Select the appropriate demonstrative pronoun for each phrase:
استعمل اسم الإشارة المناسب:

Example
الكرسي - هذا الكرسي


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { dil } r \\
& \square \text { ع } \\
& \text { O } \\
& \square \text {. } 7 \\
& \text { - V } \\
& \square \text {. } \\
& \text { - } 9 \\
& \text { • }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 4:TRANSFORMATION

Change the following demonstrative sentences to demonstrative phrases. As you do, translate the sentence and then the phrase.
حوّل كالْ من ابلمل الاسمية التالية إلى شبه جملة عُ تر جم ابلدمل وشبه الجمل إلي الأبنليزية.

## Example

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { هذا كرسي هـا الكرسي } \\
& \text {. } 1 \text { هذي جريدة. } \\
& \text { r. r. هذا فهر. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { \& . هذي أرقام. } \\
& \text { ه. هذيك وزارة. } \\
& \text { 7. هذول أصدقاء. } \\
& \text {.V } \\
& \text {. } 1 \\
& \text { 9. هذي فنرة. } \\
& \text { •1. هذول أجانب. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Example
ه هذه هرصة ذهبية ه هـه الفرصة الذهبية

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r. r. هذول طالاب مصريتن. } \\
& \text { ₹ . هذيك الآثار رائعة. } \\
& \text { م ه هذالك كتاب عربي. } \\
& \text { 7. هذولاك وزراء عرب. } \\
& \text {. . هذيك لغة صعبة. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 9. هذي نـكرة كويّسة. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ا } 11 \text { ه هذا صديق آنخر. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## III. The present tense

The past tense in Arabic is conjugated by means of suffixes which are attached to a stem. The present tense is conjugated by means of prefixes attached to a stem, and in three persons (2nd feminine singular, 2nd and 3rd plural) there is a long vowel suffix as well.
A. Stems

The stems for the past tense and present tense are different. For example, in the verb (בَرَس-(to study" the past tense markers are attached to the stem daras- درس "

| daras-t | دَرَسْتِ | I studied |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| daras-ti | دَرِّنِّ | you (f.) studied |
| daras- $\bar{u}$ | دَرِّوا | they studied |

The present tense markers are attached to the stem -drus- (درُس-).

| a-drus | أَدْرُس | I study |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| ta-drus-ī | يَدْرُسي | you (f.) study |
| ya-drus | he studies |  |

Short vowel patterns in the present tense stem vary. As you learn more Arabic you will learn how to predict many of these variations, but it is a good idea to memorize the present tense stem along with the present tense. The full present tense paradigm of درس is as follows:

| يَدْرُسوا they study |  | يَرْرُس <br> he studies |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| تَدْرُسوا you (pI.) study | $\begin{gathered} \text { تَدْرُسي you (f.) study } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { تَدْرُس (m.) study } \\ \text { you } \end{gathered}$ |
| نَدْرُس we study |  |  |

## B. Negation

The present tense is negated by using 0 .

We don't study every day.
ما ندرس كل يوم.

I don't speak fluently.
ما أتكلم بطلاقة.

## DRILL 5: CONJUGATION

التمرين الحامس: تصريف وإعادة
a. Students read the forms in the above paradigm aloud. Teacher repeats correctly for confirmation or self-correction by students.
أ. يقرأ الططلاب تصريف الفعل أعام، والأستاذ يعيد بعدهم مصحتحاً.
b. Teacher reads forms in the paradigm aloud, students repeat after and then individually. (This should be done rhythmically and firmly.)
ب يقرأ الطلاب تصريف الفعل نفسه، والطلاب يعيدون بعده جماعياً وفردياً.
c. While looking at the paradigm, students suggest the corresponding forms for كتـ. Teacher repeats forms correctly for confirmation or self-correction by students.
ج. يصرّف الطالاب أفعالاً أخرى و كـهـم مفتوحة أمامهمم، والأستاذ يعيد بعدهم مصحتحاً.

## DRILL 6: CONJUGATION

a. Teacher conjugates حاول in present tense while students listen.
أ. يصرّف الأستاذ الفعل »يكاول««، والطلاب يصغون.
b. Teacher then conjugates حاول in present tense and students repeat in unison.
ب. يصرّف الأستاذ الفعل نفسه، والطلاب يعيدون بعده جماعياً.
c. Repeat procedure with سافر.
ج. تعاد العملية نفمها باستعمال الفعل "(پسافر".
d. Teacher repeats steps $a$ and $b$ with يتكتم, then step $c$ with يتعلم.
د. يعيد الأستاذ الخطوتين (أ) و (ب) مستعملا الفعل 》يتكلمّ"، ث المُطوة (ج) مع الفعل »پيتعلّ".
e. Teacher repeats steps $a$ and $b$ with يوصل.
(ب) هـــعما> الفعل "يوصل".

## DRILL 7: CONJUGATION

التمرين السابع: تصريف
Conjugate the following short sentences in all persons.

Read the basic dialogue aloud, changing Salwa's part into that of a man, and Mark's part into that of a woman.
إقر أ الموار الأساسي مبدلاً دور سلوى بدور رجل، ودور مارك بدور سّيّدة.
IV. Pronouns as objects of verbs

The set of object pronouns used with verbs corresponds to the set of object pronouns used with prepositions. The pronoun substitutes for a noun and is suffixed to the verb, as in the following examples:

I lost my suitcase but they found it for me.


I can help you.
مُكن اساعدك.

They visited me.

- زاروني.*

We saw them.

```
شفناهم
```

* The silent alif on the third-person plural drops out when a pronoun is attached.

A note on stress shift
When a pronoun suffix is attached to a verb that ends with a long vowel, that long vowel receives the stress:
wájaduu (و جدوا) becomes wajadúhaa (و جدوها)

## DRILL 9: COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences with the appropriate form of the object pronoun.
املأ الفراغ بضمير النصب المتّصل المناسب.

1. They helped us. $\qquad$ I 1
2. He saw me at the airport.
r. Ht شافـ ــــطار.
3. We heard it (f.) tonight.
r. بمعنا
4. Do you (pl.) hear me? $\qquad$ ₹ . تسمعو
5. Did you (f.) write it (m.) for me?

$\qquad$ 0. كتبتـ
6. Have they found them?

7. I did it (m.). $\qquad$ عملت .V
8. I didn't see them. $\qquad$ A. . .
9. She read it (m.) yesterday. $\qquad$
10. He lost it (f.). $\qquad$

## DRILL IO:TRANSFORMATION

Change the underlined words in these sentences to an object pronoun.
ابدل الأمماء في الجمل التالية بضمائر النصب المّصّصلة المناسبة.


## DRILL II:TRANSLATION

التمرين الحادي عاشر: تر.جة

Translate the following sentences into Arabic:
ترجـم الجمل التالية إلى العربية:

1. I lost my new books, but then I found them in my car.
2. Did you (f.) see them when they arrived?
3. I studied French for three years, but I don't speak it.
4. We heard the students but we didn't see them.
5. Could you (pI.) help us?
6. We visited them for four days.
7. I'm reading it (the newspaper), but I don't understand everything.
8. He doesn't know me, but he knows her.
9. They did the drills, but she didn't do them.
10. When I write the words every night, I learn them.
11. I don't understand them when they speak.
V. Arabic "modal" expressions: لامْمْكِن and

Modals in English are words such as "must," "ought to," "can," "could," "should," "need to," "may," "might," "have to." In this lesson there are two such words that function modally in Arabic, لازم and لمكن.

## A. لازم "need to, have to, must, ought, should, it is necessary that"

The word لازم covers a lot of territory, as can be seen from the above definitions. It is used to express a sense of necessity or obligation. There are two things to keep in mind about لازم:

1. It is invariable (always has the same form).
2. It is followed by a present tense verb.

## Examples from dialogue

I have to practice as much as possible.
لازم أترّن قدر الإمكان.

We should always speak Arabic with each other.

B. ممكن "can, could, may, it is possible that"

When preceding a present tense verb, مُك generally acts as the modal of possibility. Like لازم, it is invariable.

## Examples from dialogue

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { I can help you. } \text { أنا مُكن أساعد. }
\end{aligned}
$$

They can read, write, and speak Arabic.
مككن يقرأوا ويكتبوا و يتكلمّوا عربي.

When مُكن is used alone, or followed by an equational sentence or a past tense verb, it means "perhaps," or "maybe."

Maybe she's at the office.
مكن هي في اللكت.

Perhaps they arrived last night.
مكن وصلوا الليلة الماضية.
C. Negation: مالم and مكن are negated with لازم

You (m.) don't have to help me.
مش لازم تساعدين.

I can't speak in French.
مش ممكن أتكلم بالفرنسية.

We don't have to study today.
مش لازم ندرس اليوم.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Can't you (f.) try? } \\
& \text { مش مكحن تَاولي؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 12:TRANSLATION

التمرين الثالين عشر: تر.جة

Translate the following sentences orally into English.
، وبعدين بالسِّارة.
0. لازم تعرفي كل هذي الكلدات بكرة.
7. كـكن تكتبي اسمك على هذي الورقة؟
V. مكن نتمرّن مع بعض قبل الصفّ؟

1. مككن تفهوِوا علي هلاْب
2. مككن أتكلمّ عربي شويّ، لكن مش بطلاقة.

- . مش مككن تسافر معنا سفرة فصيرة؟


## DRILL I 3:VARIABLE SUBSTITUTION

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ترجم الجمل التالية إلى الإنكليز ية شفوياً. } \\
& \text { 1. لازم نقرأ كل الدروس الليلة. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r. r. لازم يساعدوه. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Change the original sentence one word at a time, and translate the sentences as they change.
مُكير المدل التالية حمبما يقتضي التر كيب المطلوب لككل منها مُ ترجمها إلى الإنكليز ية.

$\qquad$

## DRILL 14: ORALTRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Arabic.
ترجم ابجمل التالية إلى العربية.

1. I can hear you (f.) now.
2. They should try.
3. They have to practice tomorrow and the day after tomorrow.
4. May I help you?
5. He should try reading.
6. She should do that.
7. We ought to arrive tomorrow.
8. I should know the meaning of that word, but I don't.
9. Could we speak together for five minutes?
10. You (pl.) should travel to some Arab countries.
11. I have to find my suitcase!
12. He has to write to his family.
13. Can't you (f.) help me?
14. You shouldn't do that.
15. We don't have to practice all the time.
VI. حَتّى "In order to, so (that), to"

The word حیى, as used in this lesson, expresses purpose. When Used in this sense it is invariable and is followed by a present tense verb.

## Examples from dialogue

You have a golden opportunity to improve.
عندك فرصة ذهبية حت تتحسن.
I have to practice as much as possible while Ism in this
good country so that I can speak fluently.
لازم أثرن قدر الامكان وأنا في هنا البلد الطيب حت أتكمم بطلاقة.

## DRILL I 5: SUBSTITUTION/TRANSLATION

التمرين المامس عشر: تبديل وترجهة

Substitute the correct Arabic for the underlined part of the sentence.
ابدل ما تحته خطط عكا يقتضيه العقن في العبارات الإنكليزية التالية.

1. We have to study to understand.

- to speak well.
- to know these new words.

2. They have to practice to speak fluently.

- to improve.
- to write better in Arabic.

3. He drove with me to help me.

- to practice speaking Arabic.
- to hear the news.

4. I'm at the Institute to study Arabic.

- to practice this foreign language.
- to write a book.
لازم يتمرّنوا حتى يتكلّوا بطاقة.
- to understand them.
- to know the whole lesson.
ساق معي حتّى يساعدني.
- to talk about his problems.
- to arrive on time.
أنا في المعهد حتى أدرس عربي.
- to learn Arabic.
- to improve in Arabic as much as possible.
VII. "كُ "All, the whole; every, each"
A. The word means "all" or "the whole" when it is followed by a definite noun, e.g.,


When followed by an indefinite singular noun, it means "each" or "every."

B. The word كلّ (and also بعض) can be followed by a pronoun suffix. For example:


A very common way of phrasing "all" or "the whole $\qquad$ " in Arabic is to say the definite noun first and then follow it with "كل plus a pronoun that agrees in number and gender with the noun. For example:

| the whole institute المعهد كلّه | الوزراء كلّهم | (the institute—all of it) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| الكلمات | (the ministers—all of them) |  |
| all the ministers | (the words—all of them) |  |

## DRILL 16:TRANSFORMATION

Read the following phrases aloud and then change them into noun + + pronoun.
اقرأ العبارات التالية ثم غير تر كيبها بيث تبدأ بالاسم، ويليه »كل، فالضمير.

## Examples

كلّ الأصدقاء - - البريدة - الصدقاء كلهما

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { I ـ كل الوزراء } \\
& \text { r. r. كل اللغات } \\
& \text { r. كـ كل الأسبوع ع } \\
& \text { ع ع كل المطقة } \\
& \text { ه. } \\
& \text { 7. } 7 \text { كل الوزراء } \\
& \text { V. } \\
& \text { A. . كل المدارس } \\
& \text { 9. هـ كل العائلات } \\
& \text { • . }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 17: ORAL TRANSLATION

1. All of us visited the embassy.
2. I've read the whole newspaper today.
3. They take (make) a trip every year.
4. We have to study all day long (the whole day).
5. I don't understand some of the questions.
6. Some of our friends went to his house yesterday and some of them didn't.
7. We don't have to practice all of the time.
8. I have visited every capital in the Middle East.
9. Do you (f.) know the names of all the students in your class?
10. Did they lose all their suitcases or just some of them?
11. Thank goodness we don't have to read the whole book tonight.

## SPEAKING ACTIVITYA

Goal:
To practice vocabulary expansion and elicitation procedures.
Materials: Index cards.
Procedure: 1. In Arabic, students elicit from teacher names of at least 15 foreign countries and their spelling, e.g.,

اليونان، النرويج، فياتنام
2. Students write names of countries on index cards in Arabic. Teacher corrects spelling.
3. Students derive names of language from names of countries, e.g.,

اللغة اليونانية، اللغة النوروييجية، اللغة الفياتنامية
and add these to index cards. Teacher confirms or corrects pronunciation and spelling.

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY B

Goal: To practice giving and eliciting specific information.
Materials: None.
Procedure: 1. Students prepare brief statements in Arabic about their previous and current study of foreign languages, including visits to countries where these languages are spoken.
2. In small groups, students interview each other in Arabic about language study. Teacher monitors interviews.
3. Students report results of their interviews to teacher, who confirms information with interviews.
4. Students then take turns asking teacher questions about the teacher's language study.
5. Teacher summarizes information on students and teacher.

Students verify or correct teacher's summary.

## TASK I: LIStening comprehension

Listen to this narrative without referring to the text. Listen to it at least two or three times in order to get the gist, and don't worry if you don't understand every word.

Then listen to it while looking at the text. Circle any words you don't know or can't guess from the context and ask your teacher for the meaning.
معهر الـلك المنار جي

معهد الــلك المار جي فرع تابع لوزارة المارجية الأمريكية ويقع في پأرلنغتونه بولاية (پفير جينبا).







 والافريفية (مثلاُ الصيـية والسوا احيلية والعبرانية والعربية).

## REVIEW DRILLS

## DRILL I:TRANSFORMATION

Change all the elements in the following sentences to plural.
افرد إل الجمce

## Exomple

مثال
سافرت إل عاصمة البلد - سافر نا إلى عواصم البلاد.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أنا زرت صديقي في بيته. } \\
& \text { r. r. ما مأت ألجريدة اليومية؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ع. . ساقت سيار هُا إل المطار. } \\
& \text { 0. سمع الحبر المهم عن الرئيس اللبناني }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 2:TRANSFORMATION

Double the numbers and read the following phrases.
ضاعف الأرقام في العبارات التالية ثم افر أها.

## Example

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { مبعة أسابيع - أربعة عشر أسبوع } \\
& \text { 7. ثمانية كتب قديمة } \\
& \text { عمسانة أجانب .V } \\
& \text { A. عـشرة مـكاتب } \\
& \text {. } 9 \text {. مئة مشكرلة } \\
& \text { • } 1 \text {. ألفين لغة }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ا ـ دولتين عربيتين } \\
& \text { Y. r. تسع كلمات جديدة } \\
& \text { r. r. ستّة بيوت كبرة } \\
& \text { ع. . ثالذة جمل صعبة } \\
& \text { ه . سبع طالبات }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 3:TRANSLATION

التمرين الثالث: تر.جة

Translate the following phrases into Arabic.
تر جم العبارات التالية إلى العر بية:

1. some employees
2. for a long time
3. interesting ideas
4. I don't understand.
5. cold air
6. I didn't find it.
7. an important announcement
8. this morning
9. approximately ten minutes
10. You're right.
11. I'm a little hungry.
12. a short trip
13. very determined
14. That's nice of you.
15. Everything is fine.
16. good night
17. Actually, I don't know.
18. almost always
19. foreign aid
20. a long distance

## DRILL 4: PRONUNCIATION

Pronounce the following words, paying attention to any changes in stress:
الفظ الكلمات التالية مراعيأ ما يملث من تغيرر في النبرة.
a. as they are
b. suffixing the pronoun -

c. suffixing the pronoun
ج. مع الضميرالتّصل "هم"]

## Example

‘áa'ila
'aas'ilati
caa'iláthum


ا ـ مدينة
r بلد
r r reman
ع . . جامعة
○
7. 7 . موظّفين

V
A A A
9. 9
. 1.

## LESSON TWELVE



## Personal Needs and Family

## OVERVIEW

The basic dialogue in this lesson models a typical exchange of information in which time schedules, personal needs, and family are discussed. The topic of family (especially children) is an accepted way of showing courteous interest in someone and is bound to arise in conversations. Arabic kinship terminology is more detailed and complex than in English, and will take some practice to master.

## GRAMMAR POINTS

I. Hollow verbs-Past tense
II. Hollow verbs-Present tense
III. Use of بد
IV. Verb strings
V. Use of
VI. Use of لسّا
VII. Comparative and superlative adjectives
VIII. Telling time

في الطريق إلى الاوتيل
basic dialogue
الخوار الأساسي
ا. سلوى: تريد تروح للاوتيل رأساً، يا سيّد مارك؟



7. مارك:
وما قدرتٍ أنام في الطائرة.
 استأجرت لك بيت جميل؟ وممكن يكون حاضر الأسبو ع الجاي، إن شاء اللّه.
「 ا . سلوى: لا. أنا مش متزوّجة. أنا لسّا ساكنة مع أبوي وأمّي وإخوتي الأربعة.

$$
\text { ع ا. مارك: } \text { عندك أربعة إخوة! ما شاء اللّه! أنت، يا ترى، البنت الوحيدة؟ }
$$

ا ا سلوى: لا. عندي أخت تزوّجت السنة الماضية. وهلاّ ساكنة هي وزوجها في ضواحي
V V ا سلوى: لا أنا مش أصغرهم. أختي ونّلاثة من إخوتي أكبر منّي. أخي أحمد هو الأصغر.

## English version

1. Salwa: Do you want to go to the hotel right away, Mark?
2. Mark: Yes, if possible. I have to see the Deputy Chief of Mission but I'd like to go to the hotel first, if that's all right.
3. Salwa: It's quite all right. Mr. Scott told me that he wants to see you around 3:30 and it's now $1: 15$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { المُدينة. هي أكبر منّي بخمس سنين. } \\
& \text { ا } 17 \text { ا. مارك: أنت أصغر الكلّ؟ } \\
& \text { عمره } 17 \text { سنة، ولسّاه في المدرسة. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ^. مارك: الحمد للّه. عائليت جاية بعد حوالي أسبوعين }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { • ا. مارك: عاك عـندنا ثـلاذة أولاد: صبي وبنتين. } \\
& \text { 11. ا. ال سلوى: مار اللّه يخلّيهم. }
\end{aligned}
$$

4. Mark: All right then, I still have time. I think I'd like to rest a bit.
5. Salwa: You must be hungry.
6. Mark: Not really hungry, but sleepy. According to my watch it's $6: 15$ in the morning, and I wasn't able to sleep on the plane.
7. Salwa: You didn't sleep at all? Then without a doubt you're tired. By the way, do you know that the embassy has rented a nice house for you? It should be ready next week (God willing).
8. Mark: Good. My family is coming in about two weeks.
9. Salwa: May I ask you how many children you have?
10. Mark: We have three children: a boy and two girls.
11. Salwa: God keep them.
12. Mark: Thank you. Do you have children?
13. Salwa: No, I'm not married. I still live with my father and mother and four brothers.
14. Mark: You have four brothers?! My goodness! Are you the only girl?
15. Salwa: No, I have a sister who got married last year. Now she and her husband live in the suburbs of the city. She's five years older than I.
16. Mark: Are you the youngest (of all)?
17. Salwa: No, I'm not the youngest (of them). My sister and three of my brothers are older than I. My brother Ahmad is the youngest. He is 16 years old and he's still in school.

## vocabulary

twelfth
way; road
on the way to
hotel
mission (DCM)
you (m.) go
to want, to wish, to desire
directly, right away

I see
رَّرأرواح / يُريد / إرادَة
I want
I go
hotel
first(ly)
objection
if it's all right


إذا ما فيه مانع

| ever, whatsoever, at all; never أَبَاً | he (it) is; he (it) will be |
| :---: | :---: |
| It's perfectly all right. | ready حاضر (-ين) |
| ("There is no objection | coming; next جاي (-ين) (-يّ) |
| at all.") | to ask سَأَل / يُّأَل / سُؤَالِ |
| to say قال / يَقول / قَوْل | child ؤلَد (أَوْاد) |
| to tell (s.o.), to say to (s.o.) قال ل | boy |
| that (subordinating conjunction) إن | girl; daughter بنْت (بَنات) |
| he sees you | "May God keep them الله يُخَلِّهم. |
| around, approximately, about حوالي | safe." (said after someone |
| quarter, one fourth رُبٌ | mentions his or her children) |
| one-fifteen | married |
| to think, to believe / | still |
|  | living; residing |
| to rest, to relax إسنْراح / يَسْتريح / | father (آباء) |
|  | mother أُمّ (أُمَّهات) (أِّ) |
| it is inevitable, it is certain that لا بُّ إنّ | brother أَخو -أُخْنِ (إخْوَة) |
| hungry جَوْعان (-ين) | my goodness |
| You must be hungry. لا بُدّ إِنّك جَوْعْان ( ("It is certain that you | "I wonder" (introduces a question) |
| are hungry.") | only, sole وَحيد (-ين) |
| really و́اللّه | sister أُخْ (أَخَوات) |
| not really لا وَاللّه |  |
| sleepy نَعْسان (-ين) | last, past ماضي |
| according to | last year السِّنَة المّاضِيَّة |
| to be able قَدَر / يَقْرِ / قُدْرْهَ، مَقْدِرَّ | husband |
| to sleep نام/ يُنام / نَوْمْ |  |
| certainly, surely أَكِد | bigger (for humans), older |
| without بدون | bigger than, older than |
| doubt | the biggest, the oldest |
| doubtless, without a doubt بدون شَكّ | smaller (for humans), younger أَضْرِ |
| by the way فِكِّرْةِ | the youngest |
| to rent, to lease | age; life span عُمْر (أَعْمار) |
| إِّتْتِّجار | he is still |
| beautiful, pretty, nice جَميل (-ين) |  |

## - supplementary vocabulary

grandfather
grandmother
relatives

## جَدِّ <br> جَدَّة <br> أَقارب

> child; infant

المفردات الإضافية
res
old person


طِفْل (أَطْفال) عَجوز (عَجائِز)

Maternal kin
aunt


Paternal kin
uncle
aunt
خال (أَخْوال)
uncle
عَمَّة (-ات)
cousins
mother's brother's son
mother's sister's son
إِبْن خحال
إِبْ خالَّة
mother's brother's daughter
بنْت نحال
mother's sister's daughter بَنْت خحالَة cousins


## GRAMMAR NOTES

## I. Hollow verbs-Past tense

Most of the hollow verbs that have occurred up to this lesson take a short vowel $u$ in the short stem for the past tense (e.g., شُفت / رُحنا / كُنت). In this lesson there are more verbs that take the short vowel $i$ in the short stem in the past (نام) and the short vowel $a$ (استراح - أراد).
A. Short vowel -i-

## Example from dialogue

You didn't sleep at all?


## to sleep نام



## DRILL I: CONJUGATION

a. Teacher goes through the conjugation of نام in the past tense. Students listen.
أ. يصرّف الأستاذ الفعل نام، والطلاب يصغون.
b. Teacher goes through conjugation of P again and students repeat. (This should be done rhythmically and firmly.)
ب. يعيد الأستاذ تصريف الفعل نام، والطلاب يعيدون بعده بشكل جماعي منتظم.
c. Students conjugate the following sentences:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ج. يصرّف الطلاب الفعل في البمل الثلاث التالية فيما هم يقر أوفا. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r. r. . . } \\
& \text { r. r. نام في بيت صلا } \\
& \text { ع. ما نام كل الليل. }
\end{aligned}
$$

B. Short vowel -a-

## Example from dialogue

We rested after the trip.
اسْرَ حْنا بعد الر حلة.
to rest استراح

| اسْتراحوا they rested | اسْتر احَتْ she rested | إسْتراح <br> he rested |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| إِشْرَحْتوا <br> you (pl.) rested | $\begin{gathered} \text { you (f.) rested } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { you (m.) slept } \end{gathered}$ |
| إستَرَحْنا we rested |  | إسترَحْت <br> I rested |

## DRILL 2: CONJUGATION

التمرين الأول: تصريف
a. Teacher goes through the conjugation of $\tau^{1}$ استر in the past tense. Students listen.
أ. يصرّف الأستاذ الفعل استراح، والطلاب يصغون.
b. Teacher goes through conjugation of $C^{1}$ again and students repeat. (This should be done rhythmically and firmly.)
ب. يعيد الأستاذ تصريف الفعل استراح، والطلاب يعيدون بعهه بشكل جماعي منظم.
c. Students conjugate the following sentences:
ج ج. يصرَف الطاب الفعل في البمل الثلاو التالية فيما هـم يقر أونا

## $\checkmark$ <br> II. Hollow verbs-Present tense

Hollow verb stems in the present tense contain a long vowel, which may be $\bar{u}, \bar{i}$, or $\bar{a}$, depending on the verb. Examples of all three types occur in the basic dialogue for this lesson.

Do you want to go to the hotel right away?
تريد تروح للأوتيل رأساً؟

I couldn't sleep on the plane.
ما قدرت أنام في الطائرة.

Here are the present tense paradigms for each type of the hollow verb:
to say قال / يَقول

| يُقولوا <br> they say | تَقول <br> she says | يَقول <br> he says |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{gathered} \text { تَقُولوا (pl.) say } \\ \text { you } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { تَقو لي you (f.) say } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { تُقول (m.) say } \\ \text { you } \end{gathered}$ |
| $\begin{gathered} \text { نَقول } \text { we say } \end{gathered}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { أَقول I say } \end{aligned}$ |

to want أراد / يُريد

| يُريدوا <br> they want | تُريد she wants | يُريد <br> he wants |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{gathered} \text { تُريدوا (pl.) want } \\ \text { you } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { تُريدي (f.) want } \\ \text { you } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { تُريد (m.) want } \\ \text { you } \end{gathered}$ |
| نُريد <br> we want |  |  |

to sleep نام


Hollow verbs that have occurred thus far, with citation of past tense, present tense, and verbal noun, are given below:
A. $\bar{u}-$ stem

B. $\bar{\imath}$-stem
to want, wish, desire
to rest, relax
to become

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أَراد / يُريد / إرادَة }
\end{aligned}
$$

C. $\bar{a}-$ stem
to sleep
نام / يَنام / نَوْم

## DRILL 3: CONJUGATION

التمرين الثالث: تصريف
a. Teacher goes through the conjugation of قال in the present tense. Students listen.
أ. يصرّف الأستاذ الفعل يقول، والطلاب يصغون.
b. Teacher goes through the conjugation again and students repeat. (This should be done rhythmically and firmly.)
ب. يعيد الأستاذ تصريف الفعل يفول، والطلاب يعيدون بعله بششكل جماعي متظم.
c. Repeat procedure for أراد.
ج. تعاد العملية نفسها باستعمال الفعل يريد.
d. Repeat procedure for نام.

د. تعاد العملية نفسها باستعمال الفعل ينام.

## DRILL 4: COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences with an appropriate present tense of the verb in parentheses.
أملأ الفراغ في المجل التالية باستعمال الفعل الضار ع (الحاضر) للأفعال الماضية الي هي بين قوسين.

Example
مثال
ما أفهم شو

تروحي معنا، يا فاطمة؟؟ $\qquad$
عائلتهم كل سنتين. $\qquad$ 7. هـم عادة


## DRILL 5:TRANSFORMATION

Change these past tense sentences into present tense.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { حوّل الأفعال الماضية إلى المضار ع في كل البمل التالية. } \\
& \text { ا. ناموا كل النهار. } \\
& \text { r. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ع . قلت لك انّي ما كنت في المكتب. } \\
& \text { ○ مار رئيس الدولة. } \\
& \text { Y. } 7 \text {. كلهم صاروا رئبا أمريكان. } \\
& \text {. . . أراد يسوق إلى القدس. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 9. } 9 \text {. } \\
& \text { • } 1 \text {. أنت استرحت في الطائرة؟ } \\
& 11
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ك. } 1 \text { عنّا في مكتب. }
\end{aligned}
$$

III. :بدّ:"To want"

The word بدّ is used with pronoun suffixes to express the concept of "to want." It is similar to the expression عند plus pronoun suffixes in that it is not really a verb, but its equivalent in English is a verbal expression.
to want بد

| بدْهُم they want | بدْها she wants | بدُّه <br> he wants |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { بدْ كُمُ (pl.) want } \\ & \text { you } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { بدِّك (f.) want } \\ \text { you ( } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { بَِّّ } \\ \text { you (m.) want } \end{gathered}$ |
| بدْنا we want |  |  |

The +1 suffix pronoun expression can be followed by a noun or noun phrase (to indicate "wanting something") or by a present tense verb (to indicate "wanting to do something").

The expressions بدّ and أراد are synonymous, both meaning "to want." The major difference between thém is that بدّ is only used in colloquial Levantine speech, whereas أراد is used in both written and spoken Arabic.

She wants help.
بدّها مساعدة.

Do you (f.) want this book?
بدّك هذا الكتاب؟

I want to be there.
بدّي أكون هناك.

We want to travel with you.
بدّنا نسافر معك.
A. Negation of بدّ بدّ is negated with مدا

Don't you (m.) want to go?
ما بدّك تروح؟

He doesn't want to read the newspaper now.
ما بدّه يقرأ البريدة هلا.
B. Past of بدّ: بدّ: is made past by a preceding كان that is not conjugated.

We wanted to see you.
كان بدّنا نشوفك.

I wanted a picture of you (pl.).
كان بدّي صورة الكم.

They didn't want to drive.
ما كان بدّهم يسوقوا.

Translate the following sentences into Arabic.
ترجم ابجمل التالية إلى العربية.

1. I want to go to the foreign ministry.
2. Do you (f.) know what he wants to do?
3. I think they want to see the DCM.
4. Do you want to ask her any questions?
5. He told me that he wants to rent a house in the suburbs.
6. When do you (pl.) want to rest?
7. If you don't mind, I want to sleep a bit before the trip.
8. Why don't you (f.) want to go with them?
9. Did they want to see the ambassador?
10. She wanted to study last night but her brother visited her.
11. I wanted to be there to see them.
12. Didn't you (m.) want to practice speaking Arabic?

## IV. Verb strings

Verbs can be "strung" together in Arabic, somewhat as in English, to express a series of actions, e.g., "I want to go to see him" or "I tried to study." In these Arabic expressons, the initial verb in the string can be in any tense and the following verbs are in the present tense, agreeing in subject with the initial verb.

## Examples from dialogue

I wasn't able to sleep. (I wasn't able I sleep.)
ما قدرت أنام.

He wants to see you. (He wants he sees you.)
ير يد يشوفك.

Do you want to go to the hotel right away?
(Do you want you go to the hotel right away?)
تر يد تروح لالؤتيل رأساً؟

## DRILL 7: SUBSTITUTION-TRANSLATION

التمرين السابع: تبلديل وتر:جة
Substitute the Arabic equivalent of the English for the underlined phrase.
أبدل العبارات الإنكليزية التي تكتها خط بالعبارات الواردة عتها، ثم ترجها إل العر بية.

1. I try to practice every day.

- to study
- to visit him
- to learn Arabic

2. He can't speak fluently.

- to rest a little
- to be determined
- to ask questions
- hear what you're saying.
- become the king.
- be with us today.

ما يقدر يتكام بطلاقة.

- sleep well.
- help us now.
- read the newspaper every day.

3. We want to try to speak Arabic.

نريد غاول نتكلّم عربي.

- to be able to speak fluently. - to ask you (m.) some questions.
- to drive south.
- to rent a house near the embassy.
- to be with our family next week.
- to try to do that.

4. Do you (m.) want to see me?
(Students create their own substitute phrases in Arabic.)
5. They tried to help their friends.
(Students create their own substitute phrases in Arabic.)

## V. أَنّ "that"

The particles إنّ and ic are used as subordinating conjunctions linking two clauses. They are followed by either a noun or suffix pronoun, as in the following examples from the text.

1. Mr. Scott told me that he wants to see you.
السيد سكوت قال لي إنّه يريد يشوفك.
2. You must be hungry.
لا بدّ أنكّ جوعان.
3. I think that I need to rest a bit.
أفتكر آني لازم أستريح شوي.
4. Do you know that the embassy rented a nice house for you?
تعرف أن السفارة استأبر ت لك بيت جميل؟

As shown by these examples, when the clause that follows li starts with a noun, (4), ان stays as it is. If, however, the clause that follows with a verb, (1) and (2), it is necessary to attach a pronoun suffix to ان as a buffer between ان and the verb. The pronoun suffix agrees with the subject of the verb. If the clause that follows is
an equational sentence that would normally start with a subject pronoun, (as in 3) (e.g., "you are hungry"), the subject pronoun (here, أنت) changes into a suffix pronoun (ك . . .) and attaches itself to ان .

## DRILL 8:TRANSFORMATION

التمرين الثامن: تفيي
Preface the following sentences with أفتكرأن and make any necessary changes.
ضع العبارة »أفتكر أنّه قبل كل من ابملل التالية مع إحداث التغيير المناسب فيها.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Examples } \\
& \text { هي في طريقها إلى السفارة. } \quad \text { - أنتكرأنها في طريقها إلى السفارة. } \\
& \text { يدرسوا مع بعض. } \\
& \text { 1. أنت) استأجرت بيت جديد. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ع. قالوا لي انتهم من المغرب ون }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { T. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 9. درجة الحرارة فوق المئة درجة. } \\
& \text {. } 1 \text {. } \\
& 11 \\
& \text { r ا } 1 \text {. تعرفوا الأجوبة كلّها }
\end{aligned}
$$

VI. لِسّا"still, not yet"
A. The word لِسّا "still" may be used as an independent particle, as in the following examples:

I still have time.
لسّا عندي وقت

I am still living with my father and mother.
أنا لسّا ساكنة مع أبوي وأمّي.

Or, with a pronoun suffix, as in:

He is still in school.
لسّاه في المدرسة.
B.

Has she arrived?
وصلت؟

Not yet.

Have you read the paper?
قر أت الجريدة؟

## Not yet. <br> لسّا.

1. Is your brother still living in Cairo?
2. I still don't know his name.
3. Has she gone to school? Not yet.
4. Are you (pl.) still at FSI? Yes, we're still students.
5. Is her sister still coming to visit her?
6. Are they still renting an apartment?
7. Do you (m.) still want to see me?
8. Is he still having problems with his car?
9. Did you (f.) write to your family? No, not yet.
10. They are still trying to see him.

## VII. Comparative and superlative

## A. Comparative

Comparative adjectives (such as "bigger, smaller") can be formed from regular adjecfives by changing their pattern, e.g.,


When used in context comparing one thing to another, the word $\boldsymbol{\sim}$ is used for "than."

My sister and three of my brothers are older than I.
أخيَ وثلاذة من إخوتي أكبر مني.

She is five years older than I. (She is older than I by five years.)
هي أ كبر منّي بخمس سنين.

## B. Superlative

The superlative ("biggest, smallest") form of the adjective looks like the comparative.
It is used either with the definite article, e.g.,

Are you the youngest?


My brother Ahmad is the youngest.
أخوي أحمد هو الأصغر.
or it is used as the first term of a construct.

Are you the youngest of all?
أنت أصغر الكل؟

Saudi Arabia is the biggest country in the Middle East.
السعودية أكبر بلد في الشرق الأوسط.

## DRILL IO:TRANSFORMATION

التمرين العاشر: تكويل

Give the comparative and the superlative forms of the following adjectives.
حوّل الصفات التالية إلى صيغة التضضيل Ff إلى صيغة التفضيل العليا.

Example
كبير - أكبر


## DRILL II:TRANSLATION

Translate the following phrases into Arabic.
التمرين المادي عشر: ترجة
تر جم ابجمل التالية إلى العربية.

1. the longest street
2. the farthest regions
3. the most famous university
4. the shortest month
5. the oldest things
6. the best idea
7. the coldest weather
8. the nicest friend
9. the closest city
10. the best employees
11. the shortest distance
12. the smallest one
13. most of the time
14. the easiest language
15. the most beautiful homes
16. the most difficult problem
17. the best time
18. the biggest airport
19. the nearest hotel
20. the shortest road

## DRILL IV: COMPLETION

التمرين الثاين عشر: تكميل

Fill in the blank with the Arabic term that corresponds to the English one.
أملؤ الفراغ بترجة الكمسة أو العبارة الإنكليزية الواردة بعده.

مدينة في العالم هي باريس. $\qquad$ 1. يقولون ان
(more) $\qquad$ r. or يتكلم

منه بسنتين (younger) $\qquad$ r. ز. زوجته
(longest) $\qquad$ ع. فر النيل
.(better) $\qquad$ O . عندهم فكرة

طالب (tallest) $\qquad$ 1. سألتي: بين
(more famous) $\qquad$ V.
آثار في السُرق الأوسط في مصر.
(oldest) .^
من دراسة اللغة (harder)
9. أفتكر أنّ دراسة اللغة العربية
الفرنسية.
(shortest) وتت كمكن.
• 1 . قرأوا الدرس في

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY A

Goal:
To be able to use and understand Arabic kinship terms, comparatives, and superlatives.
Materials: None.
Procedure:

1. Teacher draws his or her family tree on board, going back to grandparents. Teacher then describes his or her relationship to each family member, including comparative ages of siblings and dates of birth.
2. Students each draw a family tree and describe his or her relationship to other family members.

## DRILL 13: QUESTION AND ANSWER

Answer the following questions in Arabic.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { جاوب الأسئلة التالية باللغة العر بية. } \\
& \text { 1. شو هي أكبر مدينة في العا م؟ } \\
& \text { r. r. شو أكبر بلد في العالم العربي؟ } \\
& \text { r. r. شو اسم أطول فر فر في الولايات المتحدة؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ه. آثار بعلبك أقدم من الأهر ام؟ شُو أقدم مدينة في الشرق الأوسط؟ } \\
& \text { Y. شو اسم أطول فكر في العالم العربي؟ } \\
& \text { V. . مين أطول طالب في الصفّ؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY B

Goal:
To be able to compare distances and sizes.
Materials: Map of the Arab world.
Procedure: 1. Teacher indicates a city on the map and students compare the distance between that city and two others, e.g.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { T: بغداد } \\
& \text { S1: المسافة بين بغداد ودمشق أقصر من المسافة بين بغداد } \\
& \text { و بيروت. } \\
& \text { S2: المسافة بين بغداد وبيروت أطول من المسافة بين بغداد } \\
& \text { ودمشق. }
\end{aligned}
$$

2. Teacher indicates two cities on the map and students compares them in size, e.g.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { T: تو نس والقاهرة }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { S2: تونس أصغر من القاهرة الورة }
\end{aligned}
$$

## VIII. Telling time

In spoken Arabic, the hours of clock time from one to ten are referred to by using the feminine form of the cardinal number, e.g., "hour one," "hour two," as follows:
الساعة الساعثنتين

Eleven o'clock and twelve o'clock are stated in the masculine form:

الساعة أثنا عشر 12:00 الساعة أحل عشر $11: 00$ السر

Within an hour, the major segments are:

| a quarter hour | رُبْع ساعة |
| :---: | :---: |
| a third of an hour | ثلث ساعة |
| a half hour | 'ُصّ ساعة |

Outside these major segments, the number of minutes is used, most of them in units of five or ten. The words to express time before or after an hour are:
and, plus و́ minus, less إلاّ

Time within an hour is expressed in terms of three twenty-minute divisions: twenty minutes after the hour, ten minutes before and after the half hour, and twenty minutes before the next hour, as follows:

| 3:05 | الساعة ثالاثة وخمة |
| :---: | :---: |
| 3:10 | الساعة ثالانة وعشرة |
| 3:15 | الساعة ثالاثة وربع |
| 3:20 | الساعة ثالاثة وثلث |
| 3:25 | الساعة ثالاثة ونص وإلا خمسة |
| 3:30 | الساعة ثاعلانة و |
| 3:35 | الساعة ثالخألة ونص ونحس |
| 3:40 | الساعة أربعة إلا ثلـث |
| 3:45 | الساعة أربعة إلا ربع |
| 3:50 | الساعة أربعة إلا عشرة |
| 3:55 | الساعة أربعة إلا خـسة |
| 4:00 | الساعة أربعة |

DRILL 14:TELLING TIME

Give the following times in Arabic.

1. $8: 35$
2. $2: 05$
3. $5: 30$
4. $10: 15$
5. $9: 00$
6. $4: 20$
7. $2: 10$
8. $11: 25$
9. $6: 55$
10. $1: 50$

## DRILL 15:TELLING TIME

التمرين الحمامس عشر: تعريف الوقت

Read the following times out loud.

اقرأ الأوقات التالية بصوت هسموع.
06t. . 1
irgro.r
160.r

V6t. . $\varepsilon$
96ro.o
1 Y6.0.7
1.6Y0.V

へ6) - .
V600. Y
r6... 1 .

## DRILL I6:TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Arabic.
ترجم الجمل التالية إلى العر بية.

1. I have to see him before $3: 00$.
2. We'll try to be there before $8: 00$.
3. Did she say she'd be here at $12: 30$ ?
4. Why didn't you (m.) do it at $9: 15$ ?
5. I have an appointment at $2: 00$.
6. I think they're going at 5:45.
7. Let's go see them at 8:30.
8. May I see you (f.) at $1: 00$ ?

## REVIEW DRILLS

## DRILL I:TRANSFORMATION

Answer the following questions, first in the affirmative, then in the negative, changing the object noun into a pronoun.
جاوب الأسئلة التالية بالإِبجاب أولاً عَ بالنفي، عُوّلاً المعول به من اسم إلى ضمير:

Example
Did you see the king?
شفت الملك؟

> Yes, I saw him.

نعم، شُفته.

No, I didn't see him.
لا 6 ما شفته.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ا. زرت المدينة؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r. r. و جا } \\
& \text { ع. سمعتوا الإعلان؟ } \\
& \text { ○ شافت أصدقاءها؟ } \\
& \text { 7. فهـت هذي ابلمملة؟ } \\
& \text {.V }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 9. تعقـت اللغة؟ } \\
& \text { • }
\end{aligned}
$$

Fill in the blank with the present tense of the verb indicated.
أملأ الفراغ بالفعل المضار ع بدلاً من الفعل الماضي الوارد بعد الفراغ.

Example
We $\qquad$ (study) the tenth lesson. (درس) الدرس العاشر. $\qquad$ ن

We are studying the tenth lesson.
نـن ندرس الدرس العاشر.
(تكنم) الفصحى $\qquad$ 10. 1
(ساعد) صديقها. $\qquad$ r. reوى
(عرف) كل الكلمات البدياء. $\qquad$ r. أنت لازم
(درس) في هذا العهجـ. $\qquad$ \&. الأجانب
(تحسّن) في القراءة. $\qquad$ ه . ما أنتكر آني (تَرّن) مع بعض. $\qquad$ 7. أنتو مكن
(قرأ) البرائد العربية كل يوم. $\qquad$ كا نـن . (فهم) كلَ شيء؟ $\qquad$ ^. تفتكر أنهـمـ

## DRILL 3:TRANSFORMATION

Change the underlined words to plural, and make any other necessary changes.
حوّل المفردات التي تحتها نحط إلى البمع مدخحالْ إل المملة التغييرات اللازمة.

## Example

This president is very famous.
هذا الرئيس ششهور جدّا.

These presidents are very famous.
هذول الرؤساء سشهو رين جدًا.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ا ـ عندنا ملرّس جلـيد. } \\
& \text { r. صـ صيقتك سافرت إلى وين؟ } \\
& \text { r. هذي الشڭكة مش بهمّة. } \\
& \text { ع. زرنا عاصمة الدولة واللمقّة التاريخية. } \\
& \text { © هـ تساعد الطالب الأجنبي في عمله. } \\
& \text { 7. في العهد مدرّس عربي و مدرّسة أمير كية. } \\
& \text {. V } \\
& \text { ^. أفتكر أنَ بلدك جميل. } \\
& \text { 9. هذي اللغة مش صعبة. } \\
& \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 4:TRANSLATION

التمرين الرابع: ترجة

Translate the following sentences into Arabic.
ترجم الجمل التالية إلى العر بية.

1. I visit my mother and father every year.
2. According to the newspapers, the president is going to the foreign ministry today.
3. They say the minister is here on an official visit.
4. She says she went to the embassy the day before yesterday.
5. She was determined to speak with him.
6. Last year at this time there was a big storm.
7. I'm certain I've seen him before.
8. What is the distance between the two cities?
9. When you have time, we can drive to visit him.
10. I can't go without my passport.
11. Most of the time he's not in his office.

## LESSON THIRTEEN

## درس للمر اجعة

## Review

## I. VERB SUMMARY AND REVIEW

The following verbs have occurred in the lessons so far:

| $X$ | VII | $V$ | IV | III | II | I |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| استأجر استراح | افنكر | تحّن <br> تزوّج <br> تعلّم <br> ترّن | أراد | حاول ساعد سافر | ضرّنع | درس وصل <br> سأل راح <br> سمع زار <br> عرف ساق <br> عمل شاف <br> فهم صار <br> قرأ قال <br> كتب <br> وجد |

The roman numerals above the verb designate what "form" the verb belongs to. The term "form" refers to the pattern of consonants and vowels in the particular verb and there are ten forms in all. As you can see, Form I is the most basic and most
frequently occurring. The three consonants that compose the Form I verb are considered to be the "root" consonants from which the other nine forms are derived. Forms will be more extensively treated in later lessons. At the present time it will be useful for you to start identifying forms, with the help of your teacher, and sorting them out. The identification is helpful because, apart from Form I, the present tense and verbal nouns of other verb forms are predictable, so this knowledge considerably lessens the burden on your memory.

Arabs generally represent the forms by referring to a standard citation verb that uses the consonants فعل as the root. Thus the ten forms in citation form are symbolized by the following:


## DRILL I: IDENTIFICATION AND CONJUGATION

Identify the following verbs by form and conjugate them in both past and present tenses.



## II. SUMMARY OF NOUN PLURALS

Arabic nouns are made plural in three ways: the sound feminine plural, the sound masculine plural, and the broken plural.

## A. Sound feminine plural

The sound feminine plural consists of the suffix $ا$ - added to the singular stem of the word. It is used as follows.

1. For many feminine nouns ending in $\overline{0} t \bar{a}^{\prime}$ marbu $\bar{u} t a$ or $\operatorname{t} \bar{a}$ :

|  | Plural | Singular |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| republics | جمهوريات | جمهرية | republic |
| employees (f.) | موظّفات | موظّفة | employee (f.) |
| distances | مسافات | مسافة | distance |
| languages | لغات | لغة | language |

Note that some words undergo an internal vowel change when ات is added:

|  | Plural | Singular |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| years | سِّوات | سِّة | year |
| girls | بُنات | بِنْت | girl |
| sisters | أَخَوات | ا'1 | sister |
| canals | قَنْوات | قناة | canal |

2. A number of words that are masculine in gender make their plural with ات-. Two large categories of words that take the sound feminine pluralare verbal nouns of derived forms (II-X) e. g., أعلان, أعلن "to announce," and borrowed words, such as أوتيل.

|  | Plural | Singular |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| announcements | إعالانات | إعالن | مطارات |
| airports | محطات | announcement |  |
| oceans | أوتيالات | airport |  |
| hotels | أوتيل\| | ocean |  |

## B. Sound masculine plural

The sound masculine plural is the suffix ين- attached to the singular stem of the word:

|  | Plural | Singular |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| employees (m.) | موظّفين | موظّف | employee (m.) |
| teachers (m.) | مدرّسين | مدرّس | teacher (m.) |

Nouns that take the sound masculine plural refer to male human beings, or, in the plural, a mixed group of male and female human beings.

## C. Broken plurals

Broken (or "internal") plurals are made through internal vowel changes in the singular stem. Although the patterns may seem random, they are not. They fall into distinct
groups. Using the letter $c$ to represent any consonant, some of the most frequent broken plural patterns can be classified by relative frequency as follows:

1. CaCaaCiC

| Plural معاهد | Singular معهد | Plural . | Singular مركت |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| مدارس | مدرسة | مشاكل | مشكلة |
| مناطق | منطقة | كمالك | منكة |
| أجانب | أجبي | فتادق | فندق |
| دفاتر | دفتر | عجائز | عجوز |
| دقائق | دقيقة | جر ائد | جريدة |
| عواصم | عاصمة | شوارع | شار ع |
| عوالم | عالم | موانع | مانع |
| كراسي | كر سي | ليالي | ليلة |
| ضواحي | ضاحية | صحاري | صحراء |
| برامهج | بر نامج | عو اصف | عاصفة |

2. aCCaaC

| Plural أرقام | Singular رقم | Plural أقام | Singular قلم |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| أفهار | هر | أشياء | شيء |
| أولاد | ولد | أزواج | زوج |
| أخبار | خبر | أوراق | ورقة |
| ألوان | لون | أحجام | حجم |
| أوقات | وقت | أسلاكك | سلك |
| أطفال | طفل |  |  |

3. CuCuC or CuCaC

| Plural كتب | Singular كتاب |
| :---: | :---: |
| شنط | شنطة |
| ملن | مدينة |
| طرق | طريقة |


| Plural | Singular |
| :---: | :---: |
| شقَة |  |
| جلة |  |
| جزة |  |
| جمل |  |

4. CuCuuC

5. CiCaaC

6. CuCCaaC

7. $\mathrm{CuCaCaa}^{\circ}$

8. CaCaaCiiC
عناو
Singular

عنوان

> Plural فو اعنيد
Singular فنجان موعد
9. CuCCaan or CiCCaan

| Plural | Singular <br> باد |
| :---: | :---: |
| بلد (بلاد) |  |

Plural
خلجان
إخوان
Singular
خليج خ
10. $\mathrm{CaCCaa}{ }^{\text { }}$

| Plural | Singular | Plural | Singular |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| أبناء | إبماء |  |  |

There are other broken plural patterns, but these are ten of the most common ones. As you study these lists, say the words out loud to yourself and try to absorb which singular patterns typically take which plural patterns. There is a certain "rhythm" that you will begin to hear which will help you learn to predict broken plural patterns.

Rarely, but in a few common words, the plural is not based on the singular stem.


## DRILL 2:TRANSFORMATION

التمرين الثااي: تحويل
Give the singular of the following words.


Translate the following phrases into Arabic.
ترجم العبارات التالية إلى العر بية.

1. six houses
2. four rivers
3. my relatives
4. seven sons
5. new schools
6. comfortable chairs
7. all the ministers
8. my relatives
9. some families
10. all their children
11. some doubts
12. two streets
13. three cups
14. the titles of the books
15. some classes
16. twelve airports
17. nine teachers
18. many opportunities
19. all the answers
20. the meanings of the words

## III. SUMMARY OF ADJECTIVE PLURALS

Plurals of adjectives are similar to plurals of nouns and fall into the same categories: sound feminine plural, sound masculine plural, and broken plural. Remember that plural adjectives are used primarily to modify nouns referring to human beings, because nouns referring to nonhumans generally take feminine singular agreement.

## A. Sound feminine plural:

The sound feminine plural (-ات) is used on any adjective that modifies a plural noun referring strictly to female human beings.

|  | Plural | Singular |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| new teachers (f.) | مدرّسات جديدات | مدرّسة جديدة | a new teacher (f.) |
| Egyptian girls | بنات مصريات | بنت مصرية | an Egyptian girl |
| famous ministers (f.) | وزيرات مشهورات | وزيرة مشهورة | a famous minister (f.) |

## B. Sound masculine plural:

The sound masculine plural is used on many adjectives that modify plural nouns referring to male or mixed male and female groups of human beings.

|  | Plural | Singular |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| hungry boys | أولاد جوعانين | ولد جوعان | a hungry boy |
| Saudi ministers | وزراء سعودين | وزير دعودي | a Saudi minister |
| advanced students | طلاّب متقدّمين | طالب متقدّم | an advanced student |
| good teachers | مدرّسين كويّسين | مدّرس كويّس | a good teacher |
| other friends | أصدقاء آخرين | صديق آخر | another friend |

Many adjectives that take this type of plural fall into the following categories:

1. nisba adjectives (عراقي، لبناني)
2. participles (مشهور، متزوّج)
3. and adjectives ending in (نعسان، تعبان) -ان

## C. Broken plural

Two typical adjective broken plurals are as follows, with the first being the most prevalent.

## I. CiCaaC

|  | Plural | Singular |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| young boys | أولاد صغار | ولد صغير | a young boy |
| senior employees | موظّفين كبار | موظّف كبير | a senior employee (m.) |
| tall students | طلاّب طوال | طالب طويل | a tall student (m.) |
| many foreigners | أجانب كثار |  | no singular equivalent |

## 2. $\mathrm{CuCuC}, \mathrm{CaCaC}, \mathrm{CaCuc}$

|  | Plural | Singular |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| new teachers | مدرّسين جدد | مدرّس جديد | a new teacher (m.) |
| Arab leaders | زعماء عرب | زعيم عربي | $\begin{gathered} \text { an Arab } \\ \text { leader (m.) } \end{gathered}$ |
| Bedouin sheikhs | شيوخ بلو | شيخ بلوي | a Bedouin sheikh |

Translate the following phrases and short sentences into Arabic.
ترجم العبارات وابـمل القصيرة التالية إلى العربية.

1. Many teachers (m.) are here.
2. different employees
3. three Lebanese presidents
4. nice friends
5. the Saudi kings
6. Those boys are American.
7. small children
8. The girls are hungry.
9. I have three older brothers.
10. the great leaders
11. We're sleepy.
12. They are new students.
13. the Bedouin princes
14. famous old men
15. the famous women
16. official missions (delegations)
17. Yemeni men
18. married women
19. important ideas
20. the Arab ministers

## IV. SUMMARY OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE

Adjectives in Arabic generally take their comparative and superlative forms from the pattern. These forms of the adjective usually don't inflect for gender or number in spoken Arabic.

## A. Comparative:

1. The comparative form of an adjective can be used to contrast two things in quality, using the word 0 " for "than":

Cairo is bigger than Damascus.
القاهرة أكبر من دمشق.

Studying a language is harder than studying history.
دراسة اللغة أصعب من دراسة التاريخ.
2. It can also be used in an adverbial sense, to modify a verb.

She speaks Arabic better than I.


He studies more than his friend.
هو يدرس أكثر من صديقه.
3. It can be used without مِن to make a general, noncontrasting statement.

He has a better idea.


I think this is easier.
أفتكر أنْ هذا أسهل.

## B. Superlative

The superlative is used to make an absolute quality statement. It is generally used in two ways:

1. as the first term of a construct,

> He's the tallest student in the class.

هو أطول طالب في الصف.

Al-Ahram is the most famous newspaper in the Middle East.
الأهرام أشهر جريدة في الشرق الأوسط.
2. or, with the definite article without a following noun to make a general statement.

I am the youngest.

They say that this hotel is the best.
يقولون ان هذا الفندق هو الأحسن.

## DRILL 5:TRANSFORMATION

Change the following statements to comparative statements, as in the example.


## DRILL 6: SUBSTITUTION AND TRANSLATION <br> التمرين السادس: إبدال و تر.جة

Substitute the following phrases for the underlined phrase, making any necessary changes.

$$
\begin{gathered}
\text { أبدل عبارات هذا التمرين با في ابلملة التالية مع إحداث أي تغيير يقتضيه التركيب البديد هذا. }
\end{gathered}
$$

1. the oldest ruins
2. the best coffee $=$
3. the prettiest color
4. the longest river
5. the smallest island
6. the most beautiful capital
7. the easiest language
8. the oldest university
9. the most famous city
10. the biggest sea

## C. Exceptions

## 1. Root change

There are some common cases in spoken Arabic where the comparative/superlative form of the adjective may be derived from a lexical root that is different from the commonly used base form. These include the words for "good, better, best" and for "bad, worse, worst."

a. "Good, better, best"

That's a good question.
هذا سؤال جيّد.

Your answer is better than his.
جوابك أحسن من جوابه.

He's the best president in the history of the country.
هو أحسن رئيس في تاريخ البلد.
b. "Bad, worse, worst"

The weather is bad today.
الطقس اليوم عاطل.

His new car is worse than his old one.
سيارته المديدة أسوأ من سيارته القديمة.

The Palestinian problem is the worst problem in the Middle East.
مشكلة فلمطين أسوأ مشكلة في الشرق الأوسط.
2. Use of أَكْثر

Certain Arabic adjectives are used with the word أكثر ("more") to indicate the comparative state, instead of changing to the أفعل pattern. This is analogous to using the word "more" with certain adjectives in English, rather than adding the -er suffix. The adjectives that fall into this category are generally of three types: adjectives ending in انـان (erg., جوعان، تعبان) adjectives that are participles of derived verb forms (متقدّم، غتلف) and nisba adjectives (بغدادي، مصري).

She is hungrier than I.
هي جوعانة أكثر منّي.

This class is more advanced.
هذا الصف متقدّم أكثر.

His friend is more American than he is.
صديقته أمير كية أكثر منّه.


## LESSON FOURTEEN

## الدرس الرابع عشر

## Handling a Problem

## OVERVIEW

Mark arrives at his hotel but encounters a problem when he tries to register. The speaking skills involved here include getting and giving information and resolving a problem. As usual, there is a matrix dialogue before the basic dialogue.

## GRAMMAR POINTS

1. Relative clauses
II. وَحدي "Alone, by myself"
III. رَ Future marker
IV. Defective verbs
V. Verb: إجا
VI. Doubled verbs
VII. صار "To become; happen; befall"
اسمي مارك ستانلي.
 لشخص واحد أو أكثر؟
لشخص واحد -الي أنا وحدي.
عندنا غرفة مع مَّام حتوزة الكَ لكّ لكن فيه مشكلة بسيطة
خير إن شاء اللّ!

ما صار عندنا وقت كافي حتّى نغيّر الشر اشف ونغّا تصّص تنظيف الغرفة.



لا واللّه. ما أظنّ عندنا غرفة فاضية. لكن رح أحكي مع المسؤول ورح أشوف شو مكنن نعمل.
طيّب، اللّه يغنّيك ما عندي ووقت كثير . أحبّ أرتاح شوي
 غرفة نحجز ها عادة للحالات الطارئة للضيوف الرسميين، نقدر نعطيك

واحدة منها وهي أحسن من اللي كانت حكورزة الكّ، إذا تحبّ
ما عندي أيّ مانع. أفتكر هذا حلّ مناسب. الغرفة في أيّ طابق؟
في الطابق التاسع. تفضّل المفتاح. الفرّاش رح حيبي يكمل ثـنطك
11. موظف الأوتيل:
rit rer
r
متأسّفين على الإزعاج.
بسيطة. أشكرك. على فكرة، استلدت أيّ رسائل؟
خلّيني أشوف . . . لا، ما فيه شي.
طيّب. وين الأسانسير؟

الصعد على يمينك تحت الضوء الأحمر، ولمّا تتر ك المصعد في الطابق


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { في الفندق } \\
& \text { مر حباً يا أستاذ. أيّ خرهـه؟ } \\
& \text { نعم. أفتكر فيه غرفة حكوزة إلي عند عـي كم. } \\
& \text { الاسم الكريـ؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

## English version

1. Hotel Clerk: Hello, sir. Can I help you?
2. Mark: Yes. I think I have a room reserved for me.
3. Hotel Clerk: What is your name, please?
4. Mark: My name is Mark Stanley.
5. Hotel Clerk: One moment . . . let me see which room they gave you. Is it a room for one, or for more?
6. Mark: For one person-for me alone.
7. Hotel Clerk: We have a room with bath reserved for you but there's a slight problem.
8. Mark: Nothing major, I hope.
9. Hotel Clerk: We haven't had enough time to change the linen and finish cleaning the room. The maid is working on it now. Could you wait for a half hour or so?
10. Mark: Impossible. I'm in a hurry. I have an appointment at the American Embassy in an hour and I want to put my things in the room and rest a bit. Don't you have another suitable room?
11. Hotel Clerk: I'm afraid not. I don't think we have any empty rooms. But I'll talk to the person in charge and I'll see what we can do.
12. Mark: All right, but please, I don't have much time and I'd like to rest a bit.
13. Hotel Clerk: (after a few minutes) Sir, I think we can solve the problem. We have several rooms we usually reserve for emergencies, for official guests. We could give you one of those, which is better than the one that was reserved for you, if you like.
14. Mark: That sounds fine. I think that's an appropriate solution. What floor is the room on?
15. Hotel Clerk: On the ninth floor. Here's the key. The porter will come to carry your bags. Sorry for the inconvenience.
16. Mark: That's all right. I thank you. By the way, have I received any letters?
17. Hotel Clerk: Let me see . . . no, there's nothing here.
18. Mark: OK. Where do I find the elevator?
19. Hotel Clerk: On your right, under the red light. When you leave the elevator on the ninth floor, take a left and go straight (down) the hallway until you reach room number 905.

## So vocabulary

fourteenth
hello
professor; sir
reserved (e.g., a room, a table, etc.)
noble; distinguished; generous
polite way of asking

someone's name
moment
to let, permit, keep (II)
room
which; who (relative
pronoun); that
to give (IV)
direct object
pronoun carrier
person
by myself, alone
bath; bathroom
simple, uncomplicated, slight
sufficient, enough
to change (s.th.) (II)
sheet, bedclothes
to finish (II) خَاْص / يُخَاِص / تَخْلمِ
cleaning
maid, servant (f.)
 وَحْدي
اللّه يُخَلِّيك

غَيَّ / يُغيِّر / تَغْير keep you.")
to like, love

to rest, relax (VIII)
شَرْثْفَف (شَراشِف)
a (little) bit
several (followed by singular noun)
to solve; dissolve (I)


## GRAMMAR NOTES

## I. Relative clauses

Relative clauses are subordinate clauses that are (usually) linked to the main clause with a relative pronoun, such as "which," "who," or "that." They are called relative clauses because they "relate" back to something or someone (a noun or noun phrase) mentioned in the main clause. There are three things to remember about Arabic relative clauses.
A. If the antecedent of the relative clause is a definite noun, the relative pronoun must be used to link the two clauses, e.g.,

This is the suitcase that arrived yesterday.

B. If the antecedent of the relative clause is an indefinite noun, no relative pronoun is used to link the two clauses.

This is a suitcase that arrived yesterday.

C. If the verb of the relative clause is transitive, and refers back to the antecedent as a direct object, that verb must take a "dummy" pronoun object that agrees in number and gender with the antecedent. This applies to both definite and indefinite antecedents.

This is the suitcase they found (it).
هذي هي الثنطة اللي و جدوها.

This is a suitcase they found (it).
هني شنطة وجدوها.

If there is a preposition in the relative clause referring back to the antecedent as its object, that preposition must take a pronoun object that agrees in number and gender with the antecedent.

I visited the school where she studies. (the school she studies in)
زرت المدر سة اللي تلدرس فيـــــــها.

## DRILL I: COMPLETION

Insert the relative pronoun in the sentences where needed and translate each of the sentences.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ضع الكلمة 》اللّل« حيثما تدعو إليها الحاجة ين البملة ثم ترجم ابحمل كلّها. } \\
& \text { 1. وبدنا الدفتر كـبت السها فيه. }
\end{aligned}
$$

يقع بين مصر والسعودية.
r. البحر الأمتر هو البحر
يشتغل في وزارة المنارجية.
§. عندي صميق
ساعدوني.
7. شكرت المدرّسين
نقدر نحلّها.
. . هني مثـك
سأله؟
9. شو كان السؤال

Give the Arabic:

1. Where is the house that you ( pl. ) rented?
2. I think he is the person who helped us.
3. Is this the key that you (f.) lost?
4. Have you visited the country where he works?
5. Is he the person who married the king's daughter?
6. Who are the guests who are at the hotel?
7. This isn't the car I drove last night.
8. Where is the island that she visited?
9. Do you (f.) have a brother who works here?
10. We read the book that the president wrote.

## II. وَحْدي "Alone, by myself"

To express the concept of "by oneself," Arabic uses the word وحد or لوحد plus a pronoun suffix, as follows:


## DRILL 3: COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences, using an appropriate form of لو حد or وحد.
املأ الفر اغ في الجمل التالية بالكلمة وحد أو الكلمة لوحد مراعياً التركيب المناسب.
$\qquad$ ا. هو ما يكبْ يدرس



## $\delta \mathrm{III}$. <br> こ future marker

The future tense is formed by preceding a present tense verb with the particle ${ }^{\prime}$, For example:

The porter will come.
الفرّاش رح يبي.

We will reserve a room for you.
رح غحجز لك غرفة.

She'll try to solve the problem.
رح تحاول تحل الشكة.

To indicate the future of "to be," Jj is used with the present tense of كان.

They'll be at the airport.
رح يكونوا في المطار.

I'll be with you.


Will you (f.) be in Lebanon next year?
رح تكوني ين لبنان السنة الجاية؟

To indicate the future of "to have," the phrase رُنْد is used before.

| رُحْ يَكون عِنْدهُم they will have | رَحْ يَكون عِنْدها she will have | رَحْ يَكون عِنْدُه he will have |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| رَحْ يَكون عِند كُم you (pl.) will have | رَحْ يَكون عِنْدِك you (f.) will have | رَحْ يُكون عِنْدَكُ you (m.) will have |
| رَحْ يَكُون عِنْدنا we will have |  | رَحْ يَكون عِنْدي I will have |

Notice that the form of ئكون remains in the impersonal 3rd person masculine singular.

## DRILL 4:TRANSLATION

## Give the Arabic.

ترجم إلى العربية.

1. We will hear the news tonight.
2. They will get married next month.
3. Are you (f.) going to wait for us?
4. What do you think he will say?
5. I don't think they will understand.
6. Will you (pl.) help us tomorrow?
7. I'm going to speak to her tonight.
8. Are you (f.) going to try to be there?
9. I will see what I can do.
10. They say he will become the next president.

## DRILL 5: CONJUGATION

Conjugate the following short sentences using the future tense.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { صرّف البماتين القصيرتين التاليتين مع كل الضمائر } \\
& \text { ا. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY A

Goal:
To be able to discuss future events.
Materials: None.
Procedure: 1. Teacher gives a brief summary in Arabic of what the class will be doing next week, using the future tense.
2. Students confirm what they have understood the teacher to say by paraphrasing what they heard or by asking the teacher questions.
3. Teacher asks students questions about what they will do when:

- they go home tonight
- they arrive at post
- they finish the course


## IV. Defective verbs

Defective verbs are ones in which the final root consonant is "weak" and shows up as a vowel (usually $\bar{a}$ or $\bar{l}$ ). The majority of these verbs are $\bar{a}-\bar{l}$, that is, the final vowel in the past tense (citation form) is $\bar{a}$ spelled with alif maqsūura (ی) and in the present tense (citation form) is $\bar{\imath}$ (ي).

A number of these verbs appear in this lesson:


These verbs conjugate uniquely because of their final vowel. Below are charts for both past and present tense, using حكى as the example.
$\bigcirc$ Past tense

| 1 they spoke | َـَ she spoke | خَكى <br> he spoke |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| you (pl.) spoke | $\begin{gathered} \text { you (f.) spoke } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { yَكَْْتَ (m.) spoke } \end{gathered}$ |
| حَكِيْنا we spoke |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { حَكَْتْ I spoke } \end{aligned}$ |

In spelling, the alif maqșūra (ی) changes to alif mamdūda (l) when it is followed by a suffix pronoun, e.g.,

He met us.
لاقانا.

He bought it.
اشتر ا0.

يَحْكي Present tense


DRILL 6: CONJUGATION OF PASTTENSE
a. Teacher conjugates حكى in past tense. Students listen.
أ. يصرّف الأستاذ الفعل حكى والطلاب يصغون.
b. Teacher conjugates again and students repeat.
ب. يصرّف الأستاذ الفعل حكى مرة ثانية، والطالاب يعيلون بعده.
c. Teacher calls on students to conjugate individually.
ج. يطلب الأستاذ من الطاكّب أن يصرّفوا الفعل حكى واحداُواحداً.

د. تعاد المُطوات أ وب وج ود باستعمال الأفعال أعطى، مشیى، لاقى، اشترى.
e. Students conjugate the following sentences, making any necessary changes:

- ب. بصرّف الططاْب الأفعال في البمل التالية:

DRILL 7: CONJUGATION OF PRESENT TENSE
a. Teacher repeats steps $a, b$, and $c$ from Drill 6, conjugating the verbs in the present tense.
أ. أعد المطوات (أ وب وج ود) كما وردت في التمرين السادس، مصرّفأ الأنعال في صيغة
b. Students conjugate the following sentences:
ب. يصرتّ الطلأب، بعد ذلك، الأفعال في المدل التالية:

\& v. إجا "To come"
The verb إجا (or $ج$ ) is a very common one in Arabic but it is irregular in both tenses, combining aspects of hollow verbs and defective verbs. Moreover, the imperative or command form is totally different from the verb root.

Here are full paradigms of إجا for your reference and use.

Past tense إجا


يَجي Present tense


## Imperative forms

| come! (m.s.) تُعال $\quad$ تُعالي! ! |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| come! (f.s.) |  |
| come! (pl.) |  |

## DRILL 8: CONJUGATION OF PAST TENSE

a. Teacher conjugates 1 in past tense while students listen.
أ. يصرّف الأستاذ الفعل إجا والطالاب يصغون.
b. Teacher conjugates إبا in past tense and students repeat.
ب. يصرّف الأستاذ الفعل إجا والطلاب يعيدون بعده.
c. Teacher calls on students to conjugate إبا individually.
ج. يطلب الأستاذ من الطالّب أن يصرّفوا الفعل إجا فرديّا.

DRILL 9: CONJUGATION OF PRESENT TENSE

## AND IMPERATIVE

Follow steps $a, b, c$ as in Drill 8, using present tense of Lإ and imperative forms.
صرّف الفعل يبي والفعل تعال متّعاً الـطوات أ وب وج كما وردت في التمرين الثامن.

## DRILL IO:TRANSLATION

Give the Arabic.
ترجم إلى العربية.

1. She came last night.
2. She comes to see me every Sunday.
3. We came by plane.
4. Did they come from the capital?
5. Come and see us! (m., f., pl.)
6. Could you (m.) come to my office the day after tomorrow?
7. He came to speak with us yesterday.
8. The maid usually comes on Thursday to clean the house.
9. I am waiting for them but they still haven't come.
10. Do you have enough time to come and visit me?
11. She came and gave it to him.
12. I can come in a moment.
13. Can't you (f.) come with me?
14. Some of them will come, but not all of them.
15. I think he came alone.

## $\int$ VI. Doubled verbs

A number of Arabic verbs consist of a root where the second and third consonants are the same. Five of these have appeared so far.

| to like; love |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| to solve |  |
| to put | حَط |
| to suppose | ظّ |
| to point (to), to indicate | دَلِ عَلى |

In the present tense these are regular, except for the fact that the final two consonants are together,

| he likes, loves | yahibb |
| :---: | :---: |
| he supposes | yaẒunn |
| he puts | yahutt |
| he solves | yaḥull |
| he points | yadull |

In the past tense an ee-or $a y$-sound is added to the stem before suffixes that begin with a consonant, as follows:

حَبت Past tense

| حَبّو they liked | حَبَّتْ she liked |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{gathered} \text { حبَّيَّوْ (pl.) liked } \\ \text { you (pan } \end{gathered}$ |  | $\begin{gathered} \text { حبَّبَّ (m.) liked } \\ \text { you } \end{gathered}$ |
| حَيَّنْا we liked |  |  |

## DRILL II: CONJUGATION OF PAST TENSE التمرين المادي عشر: تصريف الفعل الماضي

a. Teacher conjugates $\quad$ in past tense while students listen.
أ. يصرّف الأستاذ الفعل حبّ والطلاب يصغون.
b. Teacher conjugates خَ in past tense and students repeat.
ب. يصرّف الأستاذ الفعل حَبٌ والطلاب يعيلون بعده.
c. Students conjugate individually.
ج. يصرف الطلاذب الفعل خَب كلّ .مفرده.

د. تعاد الـطووات أ وب وج باستعمال الأفعال ظن؛ دل، حطذ، حل.
e. Students conjugate the following sentences:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { هـ يصرّف الطالب الأفعال في ابلممل التالية: } \\
& \text { 1. حطّ الفنحان على الطاولة. } \\
& \text { Y. Y. ظز أنه ما في وقت كا اني. } \\
& \text { r. r. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ه . دلّ على الصورهَ. }
\end{aligned}
$$

DRILL I2: CONJUGATION OF PRESENTTENSE التمرين الثاين عشر: تصريف الفعل المضارع a. Follow steps a, b, c, and d as in Drill 11.
أ. اتّبع المطوات أ وب و ج ود كما وردت في التمرين الحادي عشر.
b. Students conjugate the following sentences:
ب. ب. يصرّف الطلاّب الأفعال في ابحمل التالية:
VII. صار "To become;happen; befall"
A. The verb has many uses in spoken Arabic. Used alone it can mean "to become" or "to happen."

She became a teacher.
صارت مدرّسة.

> What happened?
> صورو

What will happen?
شو رح يصير؟

An accident has happened.
صار فيه حادث.
B. Used with عند, it implies the concept of "to get" or "to come to have" (when used in this way, $ص$ is invariable).

We didn't have enough time.
ما صار عندنا وقت كافي.

I've got a chance to visit him.
صار عندي فرصة أزوره.
C. Used with the preposition $ل$ plus pronoun suffix, it means "have been" or "has been" in the sense of spending time (it is also invariable in this case).

How long have you been here?
كم صار لك هنا؟

I've been here a week.
صار لي هنا أسبوع.

DRILL 13: CONJUGATION OF صار
التمرين الثالث عشر: تصريف 》صاره<

Conjugate the following sentences:
صرّف الفعلين التالين مراعيًاً ما يكاث من تغير في التر كيب:

Teacher reads sentences aloud and students translate:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { يقرأ ألأستاذ البمل والطلاب يترجموفا. } \\
& \text { I. صار فيه مشيكلة. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. . . صرنا طالوب } \\
& \text {. . . ما يصرنر. } \\
& \text { 9. صار لما أربعة أشهر في الشرق الأوسط. } \\
& \text { • . }
\end{aligned}
$$

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY B

Goal: To practice handling unexpected problems.
Materials: None.
Procedure: 1. Students decide on one of the following scenarios to enact in Arabic with the teacher.
a. At the airport in an Arab city, you go to the airline counter to check your bags and board the plane and discover that the flight has been cancelled. You have an urgent appointment in London and must negotiate with the airline representative how to get there as soon as possible.
b. You arrive at the Foreign Ministry for an appointment with the Deputy Foreign Minister and are informed that he is tied up in a meeting. You are told by his secretary that you can wait, or make another appointment or see the Assistant Deputy Foreign Minister. You have to find out how long the wait might be and then decide what to do.
c. A congressional delegation consisting of four people wants to make an unscheduled visit to a local AID project. You must negotiate with the car pool manager who speaks no English, in order to get suitable transportation for them.
2. Students as a group devise a strategy for dealing with the problem (this can be done in English), including any key lines they think they will need, and any extra vocabulary.
3. Teacher acts as a resource, helping students generate "key lines" providing needed vocabulary items, and then rehearsing the situation with the students as a group.
4. Students role play the situation one-on-one with the teacher, who plays the part of the native speaker.

Students may optionally want to record the role-play in order to critique their own performance.

## REVIEW DRILLS

تمارين للمراجعة

## DRILL I:TRANSFORMATION

Change the following past tense sentences into the present tense and then translate them into English.
حوّل الأفعال في الجمل التالية من الماضي إلى المضار ع عُ تر جم ابجمل إلى الإنكليزية.

## DRILL 2: COMPLETION

Complete the sentences with words from the following list.
املأ الفر اغ. .ما يناسب من الكلمات في القائمة التالية.


بعد سفر ه. $\qquad$ I. مارك كان

موعد.
$\qquad$ r. ما تقلري تشَوفيه
$\qquad$ ع. البِّوّ في الشرق الأوسط في الصيف

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 0. ما أريد أنام. أنا هش } \\
& \text { يتكلمّوا عربي } \\
& \text { + } 7 \\
& \text {.V } \\
& \text { في ضواحي عمّان. } \\
& \text {. . أخت سلوى } \\
& \text { لوزارة البارجية. } \\
& \text { 9. معهد الـلك الخنارجي } \\
& \text { باب شقتنا. } \\
& \text { ض } 1 \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Transform these sentences from positive to comparative, using the following model.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { حوّل الجمل من صيغة الصفة البـيطة إلى صيغة التفضيل كما ترى في المثال التالي: } \\
& \text { هي صغيرة. (أخوها) - هي أصغر من أخوها. }
\end{aligned}
$$



## LESSON FIFTEEN



## Eating Out

## OVERVIEW

In this lesson Mark decides to have dinner in a restaurant. The conversation he has with the waiter begins with pleasantries and continues around ordering a meal. It involves the use of polite requests, inquiries, and imperatives.

## GRAMMAR POINTS

I. Verb forms
II. Quadriliteral verbs
III. Imperatives
IV. Use of إِيّا
V. Use of نَفْس

## $\int$ MATRIX DIALOGUE

مارك يقرّر يروح إلى مطعم عربي صغير قريب من الفندق حتّى يتناول طعام العشاء. يمشي إلى المطعم
 من الشبّاك مفكرّ شو يريد ياكل.

ا. المتخدم: إن شاء اللّه أعجبك المنظر يا أسناذ؟ يا ساٍام! شوف ما أجمل زهور الـديقة!

Y
فعلاً، منظر رائع يفتح الشهية للؤكل بدون شكّ. وهال قول لي شو عند كم اليوم؟ r.
₹ . مارك:
ه. المتخدم: تارم تفّل، هذي قائمة الطعام. تريد أتر جـم لك؟
لا، لكن صعب عليّ أقرأ خحط اليد. من فضلك اقرأ لي أنت أسماء أكلات
7.

اليوم.
. V. المتخدم: عندنا سلطة و كو سا عششي وورق عنب و كبّة و كفتة بالصيـيـة وشاورما . . .
مُتاز. أكيد عندكم كمان مقبّالات، مش هيك؟ عـك
.

البادبنان والخيار و . . .
عظيم. اعطيني صحن شاور رما وصحن صغير همّص وخبز و دملطة لو سمحت.
-
على عيني. أيّ شي ثاني يا أستاذ؟ تحب تشرب شـ شي؟
جيب لي قنينة مي معلنية من فضلك.


من كل بدّ. دقيقة واحدة بسّ. (بعد قليل من الوقت)

 ع ا. المتخدم: المترم:

1 1 . مارك:
صحتين يا أستاذ. تفضّل شرّفنا دائماً.
رح أرجع بدون شلكّ. على فكرة فيه تليفون قريب مكنن أستعدلـ؟ لازم أتلفن

: IV للفندق.

 ما معي فراطة. حذ اصرف في دينار وجيب لي ورقة المساب في نفس الوقت من فضلك. r. . المستخلدم:

## English version

Mark decides to go to a small Arab restaurant near the hotel to have dinner. He walks to the restaurant, enters it, and asks the maitre $\mathrm{d}^{\prime}$ if he can sit at a table near a window. He sits by himself and looks out the window, thinking of what to eat.

1. Waiter: I hope you like the view, sir.
2. Mark: Yes, indeed! See how beautiful the (flower) garden is.
3. Waiter: Really, a splendid view whets (opens) the appetite.
4. Mark: No doubt about it. Now tell me, what do you have today?
5. Waiter: Here's the menu. Do you want me to translate for you?
6. Mark: No, but it is hard for me to read the handwriting. Please read the names of today's dishes for me.
7. Waiter: We have salad, stuffed squash, grape leaves, kibbee, kafta-in-a-tray, shawarma.. .
8. Mark: Excellent. Surely you have appetizers, as well, don't you?
9. Waiter: Of course. We have (any) appetizers you like: hummos, bread, and salad.
10. Mark: Great. Give me a dish of shawarma, a small dish of hummos, bread, and salad.
11. Waiter: Right away. Anything else, sir? Would you like to drink something?
12. Mark: Bring me a bottle of mineral water, please.
13. Waiter: Certainly. Just one minute.
14. Waiter: [A little while later.] I hope the food pleased you.
15. Mark: The food was really excellent—abundant and delicious. Thanks a lot.
16. Waiter: To your health, sir. Please honor us (with a visit) again.
17. Mark: I'll certainly return. By the way, is there a phone nearby? I have to phone the hotel.
18. Waiter: Use the phone over there. Pick it up; that is, raise the receiver, put 50 fils in to get the line, and then dial the number.
19. Mark: I don't have change. Please take and change this dinar for me, and bring me the bill at the same time.
20. Waiter: Yes, sir. I'll bring it right away.

## $\delta$ vocabulary

المفردات

certainly; by all means
little, few
really, truly
bon appetit
excellent
delicious
to honor (s.o.) (II)

مِنْ كُرَ بُدّ
قليل (قِلال)
بالْحَقِقَّة $\quad$ to phone (s.o.) (Q)
to return (I)
telephone (noun)
to use (X) إستْتْدَم / يَتْتْدْدِم / إسْتِخْدْام
to raise (I)
receiver
fils (pl. = money)
(-ينمُمْتُناز $\quad$ to change (money);
spend (I)
dinar
bill, invoice
رَبَع / يَرْبِع / رُجوع
تَليفون (-ات)

رَفعَع / يَرْفَع / رَفع
same; self
at the same time
affirmative response
right away; immediately
شَرَّفَ / يُشَرِّفِ تَتْرْ سُمَاعة (-ات) فِلْس (فُلوس)
change (coins)

to a command or request



دينار (دَّانير)
,

## SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

وَجْبَة (-ات)
green beans
مفردات إضافية
vegetables
meal
breakfast
lunch
rice
knife
fork
spoon
chicken
fish
meat
veal
steak
soup
peas


## GRAMMAR NOTES

## 1．Verb forms

The majority of Arabic verbs can be classified by what is traditionally called their ＂form．＂Every triliteral root has ten potential forms that are derived from it，each form exhibiting a specific and predictable phonological shape and embodying a meaning related to the lexical content of the root．

It is important and useful for students of Arabic to understand the system of verb forms because the present tense，verbal nouns，and participles of Forms II－X are predictable，and knowledge of the system greatly expands mastery of vocabulary．

It is also necessary to know how this system works in order to use an Arabic－ English or Arabic－Arabic dictionary，as dictionaries are organized by roots and not by spelling of individual words．

Following is a chart of a basic Arabic root：فع⿰冫⿰亅⿱丿丶丶⿱⿰㇒一乂厂，The chart includes the past tense， present tense，verbal nouns，and active and passive participles for each of the ten verb forms of the verb．Use this chart for reference and work on memorizing it and or fitting other verbs into it．The sooner the system is mastered，the sooner Arabic vo－ cabulary will become more easily accessible．

## Arabic verb forms

| Passive <br> Participle <br> اسم المفعول | Active <br> Participle <br> اسم فاعل | Verbal <br> Noun <br> المـر | Present <br> Tense <br> المضارع | Past <br> Tense <br> الماضي | Form <br> الوزن |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| مَفْعول | فاعِل | Unpredictable | فَفْعِل | فَكِل | I |
| 'rفُعَّك | 're'erex | تَفْهِيل تَفْعْلَة | يُفَعِّ | فَعَّ | II |
| مُفاعَلِ | مُفاعِل | مُفاعَلة فِعال | 'ِفاعِل | فاعًل | III |
| ${ }^{\text {², }}$ | 'رْفُعِل | إفْعال | 'فُفِّل | أَفْفَل | IV |
| مُتْفَكَّ | مُتْفَفِّ | تَفَعُلٌ | يَتِفَّلِّ | تَفَعَّلِ | V |
| مُتْفاعِل | مُتْفاعِل | تَفاعُل | يَتِفاعِل | تَفاعِلِ | VI |
|  | مُنْفَفِّ | الْفْعِال | يَنْفَكِلِ | ! إْنْفَلِ | VII |
| 'reفُعْلِ | 'rفْفْتِ | 㫫 | يَفْفْعِل | إِفْعَ | VIII |
|  |  | إفْفِّ | يَفْعَلِّ | إِفْحَّ | IX |
| مُسْتْفْعَل |  | إِّبْفْعْ | يَسْتِفْفِل | إِسْفْفْلِ | X |

To help you organize your knowledge of the verb system, here is a summary of the verbs that have occurred in the text so far, according to their form.

## Form I




Form II
خلّى غيّر

Form III
سافر لاقی

Form IV
أعطى
أراد
أعجـب

Form V
تحسّن تزوّج

تفضّل
تعلّم
تمرّن


## Form IV

تناول

## Form VII

Form VIII
انتظر
استلم اشتغل
ارتاح
افتكر

## Form IX

## Form $X$





$\sigma$
II. Quadriliteral verbs

There is a set of verbs based on four consonants instead of three. They are called quadriliteral. The verbs تر تـمـ and تلفن are of this type. They will be indicated in vocabulary lists with a (Q). In the past tense they conjugate like triliteral verbs using the past tense suffixes. In the present tense they conjugate as follows:

Present tense تَرْجَم

| يُترَجـووا <br> they translate | she translates | يُتَرْجِم <br> he translates |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{gathered} \text { تُتَرْجَموْ (pl.) translate } \\ \text { you } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} (\mathrm{C} .) \text { translate } \end{gathered}$ |  |
| نُتَرْجِم we translate |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { I translate } \\ & \text { أُرْمَمْ } \end{aligned}$ |

The verbal noun is تَرْجَمَة. The imperative form is تَرْجم.
a. Teacher goes through present and past tense conjugations of تلفن while students listen.
أ. يصرّف الأستاذ الفعل تلفن مع كل الضمائر والطالاب يصغون.
b. Teacher models conjugation and students repeat in unison.
c. Students conjugate the following sentences:

III. Imperatives

The imperative or command form of a verb is based on the present tense second person forms: you (m.), you (f.), and you (pl.). The procedure for forming the imperative for most verbs is as follows:
A. Remove the subject marker (prefix). For forms II, III, V, and VI and for quadriliteral verbs, this is all that is necessary.
B. For forms I, IV, VIII, and X, prefix hamza plus a short vowel ( $\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{i}, \mathrm{or}, \mathrm{u})$.

## Examples

Form I: $\quad$ Prefix /i-/ if stem vowel is a or $i$
Prefix /u-/ if stem vowel is u

Verb
س

Imperative

| ! | (m.s.) |
| :---: | :---: |
| !إِألّي! | (f.s.) |
| ! | (pl.) |

Imperative
(m.s.) Sit!
(pl.)

| Verb |  | Imp |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| دخل | اُدْخُلِ | (m.s.) | Enter! |
|  | اُدْخُلِّ | (f.s.) |  |
|  | اُدْحُلوا! | (pl.) |  |

Form II: No prefix added


Form III: No prefix added

| Verb |  | Imperative |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| حاول | حاول! | (m.s.) |
|  | حاوِلِ! | (f.s.) |
|  | حاولو!! | (pl.) |

Form IV: Prefix/a-/

Imperative
(m.s.) Give! (f.s.)
(pl.)

Form V: No prefix added


Form VI: No prefix added
Verb
تعاون

تُعاوْنْ
Imperative
(m.s.) Cooperate!

تَعاوَني! (f.s.)
(pl.)

Form VII: Imperative is rare

Form VIII: Prefix/i-/


Form X: Prefix/i-/


DRILL 2:TRANSFORMATION

Change the following masculine singular imperative to feminine singular and then to plural.

حوّل أفعال الأمر من المذكّر المفرد إلى المؤنث المفرد فإلى البمع.

## Example

اترك! اترك اتركو!! Leave!


## DRILL 3:TRANSLATION

Give the Arabic.
ترجم الممل القصيرة التالية إلى العربية.

1. Phone me tomorrow!
2. Help them!
3. Carry these things, please.
4. Put the glasses on the table.
5. Open your briefcase.
6. Ask for the bill.
7. Wait for me in your room.
8. Come after lunch.
9. Leave your husband at home.
10. Use this elevator.
11. Have breakfast at the hotel.
12. Ask him the question.

## Some exceptions

Form I hollow verbs and form I doubled verbs take no prefixes.

| $\ldots$ Doubled |
| :---: |
| حُطّ (m.s.) put! |
| حُطِّ (f.s.) |
| حُطو! (m.pl.) |

Hollow -ū
(m. s.) look!

شوفي! (f.s.)
شوفو! (m. pl.)

Hollow -ī
جيب (m.s.) bring!
جيي! (f.s.)
(m. pl.)

The verbs أخلذ "to eat" أكل "to take" are reduced in form:


## DRILL 4:TRANSFORMATION

Change the following sentences into all three imperative forms:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { حوّل الجمل التالية إلى صيغة الأمر للمفكر المفرد والمؤنث المفرد وابلمع. } \\
& \text { ا. أحخ كل الفلوس. } \\
& \text { Y. Y. شافت نائب رئيس البعثة. } \\
& \text { r. r. أكلنا مكبوس باذبحان } \\
& \text { ع. أنت دصمّم. } \\
& \text { ه. مرو حوا للملدرسة. } \\
& \text { 7. } \\
& \text { V V. قالت لنا اسم الوزير البمديد. } \\
& \text { ^. . . يستريح بعد سفرته الطويلة. } \\
& \text { 9. } 9 \text {. نزور عائلتنا. } \\
& \text { • }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 5:TRANSLATION

Give the Arabic for the following sentences, using all three forms of the imperative.
ترجم إلى العربية هـعدلاُ فعل الأمر في المذكّر الففرد والمؤنث المفرد وابلمع.

1. Tell me what he said.
2. Drive straight down this street.
3. Bring it (m.) now.
4. Eat your food!
5. Look at that car!
6. Go home (to your house).
7. Go and tell her to come here.
8. Visit us tomorrow!
9. Put your suitcase in your room.
10. Come here, please.
11. Please close the door.
12. Please leave right now.
13. Write me a letter!
14. Drink lots of orange juice!
15. Take these things and put them in the office.

## SPEAKING ACTIVITYA

Goal: To use imperative verbs to explain, instruct, and direct.
Materials: None.
Procedure: 1. Students each choose a topic to explain and prepare a list of terms they will need to use, consulting teacher for help with vocabulary (if needed). Explanations should be kept as simple as possible and contain imperative verbs.
2. Students take turns explaining different things to teacher.

Teacher listens, paraphrases, and verifies verbally as the instructions are given. At end of explanation, teacher summarizes. For example, explain how to:
a. get a taxi
b. order Chinese food over the phone
c. use a pay phone
d. get to a student's house
e. make reservations at a restaurant for dinner, or at a hotel

## IV. Use of ايّا

Some verbs, such as جاب or أعطى, take two objects, that is, one gives somebody something. The thing given is called the direct object, while the recipient is called the indirect object. When these objects in Arabic are both suffix pronouns, only one is attached to the verb. The other one is suffixed to the "pronoun object carrier" ايّا.

Let me see the room (which) they gave (it) to you.
خلّيني أشوف الغرفة اللّي أعطوك ايّاها.

I gave them to you.
أعطيتك ايّاها.

Other verbal expressions also use آيّا to carry a pronoun object. These include عند, , مع , as well as verbs used with the preposition $ل$, which means doing something "for" someone, or "to" someone, e.g.,

Do you want it (f.)? بدّك ايّاها؟

She opened it for me.
فتحت لي ايّاه.

He wrote it (f.) for us.
كتب لنا آيّاها.

He told it to them.
قال هـم ايّاه.

## DRILL 6:TRANSLATION AND TRANSFORMATION

التمرين السادس: ترجة وتحويل

Give the English for the following sentences. Then change the object into a pronoun object using إيّا


Example مثال
أعطاك الجريدذ؟ - أعطاك آيّاها؟

ا. ما جاب له المداب.
r. r
r. أعطيني فنحانك، من فضلك. ع. ما أعطانا أسماء الضيوف ه . بذّكم مقّبّات؟
7. تر جموا لي ابلمـل
V. و جدوا لك الشـطة؟

1. خالّو هِا سشّة كتب جديده. 9. جابوا هـم أكل. .

I ا . مكن تعطوها الأوراق؟ 6 من فضلك. $\qquad$

## V. Use of نَفْس

The word نفس in Arabic has two meanings: "self" and "same." In this lesson it is used in its meaning of "same." When it is used in this way, it becomes a construct relationship with a following definite noun, e.g.,
at the same time $\quad$ نفس الوقت
the same thing نفس الشيء

## DRILL 7:TRANSLATION

اللدرس السابع: تر.جة

Give the following phrases in Arabic.
ترجم العبارات التالية إلى العربية.

1. the same day
2. the same street
3. the same rooms
4. the same language
5. the same knife
6. the same bottle
7. the same area
8. the same floor

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY B AND TASK

Goal:
To become familiar with the names of Arabic food and how to order in a restaurant.
Materials: Arabic menu (provided by teacher).
Procedure: 1. Students, with teacher acting as informant, identify major divisions of menu.
2. Students pick out words that they know, including Arabic

3. Students may ask teacher for translation and explanation of items they don't know, e.g., فول ولطعمية.
4. Students and teacher role play ordering in a restaurant with teacher as waiter.

## REVIEW DRILLS

DRILL I: CONJUGATION

Conjugate the following sentences in the past tense, making any necessary changes.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { صرّف الأفعال الماضية في المىل التالية مراعياً ما يماث من تغيير في بعض هذه ابملـ. } \\
& \text { ا. الاقى غرفته. } \\
& \text { r. r. حبّ البلد. } \\
& 3 \text {. اجا لوحده. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 。 . حل لم المثة. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 2: SUBSTITUTION AND TRANSFORMATION

Change the following sentences to the future tense, as in the model.
حوّل الأفعال في المـل التالية من صيغة الماضي !الى صيغة اللـَتبل كما ترى في المثال.

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { اجا امبارح. (بكرة) } \\
& \text { ا ا خعطّينا الثنط في غرفتنا قبل ساعة. } \\
& \text { (ب. كان نائب رئيس البثة. } \\
& \text { (بكرةَ الصبح) } \\
& \text { r. r. حكتوا مع الأولاد امبارح؟ } \\
& \text { ( لّا أشوفها) } \\
& \text { (الأسبو ع الباي) } \\
& \text { ع. أعطتي عنوان بيتهم قبل شوي. } \\
& \text { 0. وصلت عائلته قبل أسبوع. } \\
& \text { 7. انتظر أخوو الليلة الماضية. } \tag{الليلة}
\end{align*}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ^. تركت أبوي وأتي بَّا رحت للجامعة. الْا أدخل البامعة) } \\
& \text { 9. مشينا إلى البحر مع بعض امبارح. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 3:TRANSLATION

Give the Arabic.
ترجم إلى العر بية.

1. Isn't this the book you're reading?
2. We found a hotel that we like.
3. I think he is the person I saw last night.
4. Are the rooms we reserved ready?
5. All the students studying Arabic went to the Arab restaurant.
6. The teacher (f.) who got married last year is still working.
7. The person who came to visit us is a foreigner.
8. Do you have a friend who can drive?
9. Yesterday I heard two persons speaking Arabic.
10. I work in the same office he does.
11. Did you (m.) do the same thing?
12. Did they receive the letter you (f.) wrote?

## LESSON SIXTEEN



## Bargaining and Buying

## OVERVIEW

In this lesson, Mark finds out from an Arab acquaintance where to go shopping and how the system of bargaining works. At the end of the lesson he has a bargaining session with a taxi driver. So, in addition to acquainting you with some new vocabulary and grammatical structures, this lesson gives you some practical pointers and practice on bargaining in the Arab world.

## GRAMMAR POINTS

I. بما إن "Since, inasmuch as"
II. لازم يَكونَ عِنْد "Have to have, must have"
III. Use of قَبْدما قْما
IV. Negative imperatives
V. Conditional sentence

## $\delta_{\text {matrix dialogue }}$

## 〇 BASIC DIALOGUE

الـو ار الأساس
اليوم عَندنا عطلة في السفارة، و.ما آنّنا معطّلِن فكرت أنّ الوقت مناسب حتّى ا. مارك: أنز ل للسوق وأشتري كم هدية لالأصدقاء. بفكركُ نوع خاصّ من الهدايا يا سيّد ماركّ
r. r. r. مارك: حن أيوه، هدايا من المصنوعات الحملّية التقليدية طبعاً

 0. مارك: السجّاد والملاجس التقليدية وغيرها.

7. حسن:

V. مارك: وإذا آخذ تاكسي، قدّيش لازم أدفع يا ترى.

لا تدفع أكثر من دينار ونص، وإذا طلب أكثر لاز لازم تساومه وتّفّفقوا على
^. حسن:

طيّب. ولازم أعطيه بقشيش، مش هيك؟
أكيد. هيك هي العادة هنا.
9.

- . 1 . حسن:

 له ז، وإذا طلب 9 قول له 0، ع، و وهيك وإذا قال: »لا! هذا قليل!<؟

צ 1 .
 وتشتري من غيره.
أنا شخصّاً أفضّل أقضي في السوق كم ساعة أتعرّف فيها على الحلالّت
1 1 . مارك: والبضائع وأقارن بين الأسعار. متاز.معك حقّ. لازم يكون عندك فكرة ون واضحة عن البضائع والأسعار وهيك
 تقدر تقرّر ايش تشتري ومن وين تشتريه. العفو يا سيّد ماركـ على النصيحّة يا سيّد إن شاء حسن! الله.

1 1 .

## English version

1. Mark: Today we have a day off at the embassy and since we're off, I thought it would be a good time to go to the suq and buy some gifts for friends.
2. Hasan: Do you have a particular kind of gift in mind?
3. Mark: Yes; local traditional crafts, of course.
4. Hasan: You mean handmade local crafts?
5. Mark: Exactly. Things that usually interest foreigners and are related to the culture of the area, like rugs, traditional clothing, etc.
6. Hasan: What you need is in Sup Sharqiyya.
7. Mark: If I take a taxi, how much should I pay?
8. Hasan: Don't pay him more than one and one half dinars. If he asks for more, you'll have to bargain with him and make sure you agree on the fare before you get in the car.
9. Mark: OK. And I should give him a tip, shouldn't I?
10. Hasan: Sure. That's the custom here.
11. Mark: What's the way of bargaining in the sup? What are the limits?
12. Hasan: In that suq, the prices aren't fixed. So if the merchant asks you for six dinars, tell him three; and if he asks for nine, tell him four-and-ahalf, etc.
13. Mark: And if he says "No, that's too little"?
14. Hasan: Tell him, "Okay, I'll go (see) another shop." Then he'll reduce the price because he's afraid you'll leave him and buy from someone else.
15. Mark: Personally, I prefer to spend a few hours in the suq getting acquainted with the shops and goods and comparing prices.
16. Hasan: Excellent. You're right. You ought to have a clear idea about the goods and prices, and then you can decide what to buy and where to buy it.
17. Mark: A thousand thanks for the advice, Hasan!
18. Hasan: You're welcome, Mark. Good luck.

## $\delta$ vocabulary

sixteenth
holiday, vacation
since, inasmuch as, seeing as

 بما إن
on holiday, off work to descend, go down (I)


نَزَّلْ / يَّْزِ /
'


## Supplementary vocabulary

open (adjective)


expensive
cheap
to sell (I)

## GRAMMAR NOTES

I. "Since, seeing as, inasmuch as"

كما إن . is an idiom. It is followed by a noun or suffix pronoun.

Since you are here, let's go together.
.ما إنّك هنا، خلّينا نروح مع بعض.

Seeing as we're on holiday, I thought it would be suitable a time to go to the sup. ما إننا معطّين، فكّرت أنّ الوقت مناسب حتّى أنزل للسوق.

Since I have (some) spare time, why don't we go to the movies?


## DRILL I:TRANSLATION ANDTRANSFORMATION

Read the following pairs of sentences and translate them into English. Then prefix . إنا to the first, and change the two single sentences into one compound sentence.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { اقرأ أبلمل التالية وترجمها إلى الإنكليزية، ثُ ضع العبارة ٪.ما إنّه في بداية كل منها وراع ما يقتضي } \\
& \text { ذلك من تغير في بعنها }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Example

I'm a foreigner. I don't know the city well.
أنا أ حنبية. ما أعرف المدينة كو يس

Since I'm a foreigner, I don't know the city well.
.كا إنّي أحبية ما أعرف المدينة كويس.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ا. الطعم قريب. خلّينا كنشي إليه. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r. r. اليوم عطلة. ليش تر تريد تشتغل؟ بـع }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { o هذا الحملّ مـكر. روح إلى عُلّ ثاني. } \\
& \text { Y } \\
& \text { ما معي فلوس كفاية. مكـن أدفع بعدين؟ . V } \\
& \text { 1. . هو المسؤول. اسأليه. } \\
& \text { 9. ما عند كم سيارة. تعالوا معي. } \\
& \text { • ا. المبرّسة مش مو جودة. ادرسوا لو حدكمـ. }
\end{aligned}
$$

II. لازِم يكون عِنْد "Have to have, must have"

To use لازم with عند, the word يكون must be used after لازن.

You have to have a passport in order to travel.
لازم يكون عندك جواز سفر حت تقّدر تسافر .

I need to have a chance to study the lesson.
لازم يكون عندي فرصة حت أدرس الدرس.

The past tense of this expression is formed by putting كان before لاز

She needed to have more money to buy it. كان لازم يكون عندها فلوس أكثر حتى تشتريه.

I had to have a reservation. or I should have had a reservation.
كان لازم يكون عندي حجز .

DRILL 2: SUBSTITUTION AND TRANSLATION
التمرين الثالي: تربة وتحويل
a. Complete the following sentences by inserting the Arabic equivalent of the English phrases.
أ. أكمل ابجمل التالية بترجمة العبارات الإنكليزية.

Example
.(telephone) $\qquad$ لازم يكون عندي
.(change) $\qquad$ ا. لازم يكون عندك
(the same address) $\qquad$ r. الازم يكون عندهم
(the menu) $\qquad$ r. لازم يكون عندي
(a teacher who knows Arabic) $\qquad$ を . لازم يكون عندك
(a room by herself) $\qquad$ ه ه لازم يكون عندها
.(all the money now) $\qquad$ 7. لازم يكون عندنا
(a key to open the door) $\qquad$ V لازم يكون عندي . لا . . لازم يكون عندك . (all their names). .(a new office) $\qquad$ 9. لازم يكون عنده
(newspapers to read) $\qquad$ - ا. لازم يكون عندكم
(the bill in order to pay) 11 الازم يكون عندنا (his telephone number) $\qquad$ Ir. ال ازم يكون عندك
b. Change the sentences above to the past, using كان.
ب. حوّل المحمل السابقة من الحاضر إلى الماضي مستعملاً الeعل »كان«"

## III. بَبْدما and قَبْلما

The words قبل and mean "before" and "after," respectively. But there are restrictions on their usage: they can only be used with nouns or pronouns. To express "before" or "after" with a verb, قبل and بعد are suffixed with قبلما :ما and بعدما.

## قبلما and قبل

I want to see her before I travel.
أريد أشوفها قبلما أسافر.

I want to see her before the trip.
أريد أشوفها قبل السفرة.

## بعدما and بعد

They spoke to us after they visited the museum.
تكنّموا معنا بعدما زاروا التتحف.

They spoke to us after visiting the museum.

## DRILL 3:TRANSFORMATION

Transform the following sentences replacing the verbal noun with the verb and changing قِق or بقل to or to بعلما

حوّل المصدر إلى فعل في كل من ابلمل التالية واستعهل قبلما أو بعدما بدلاً هن قبل أو بعد.


Don't get in the taxi before agreeing on the fare!
لاتر كب التاكسي قبل الاتّفاق على الأجرة!

Don't get in the taxi before you agree on the fare!
لاتر كب التا كسي قِبلما تُتْقوا على الأجرة!

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ا ـ اشترت المدايا بعد المقارنة بين الأسعار. } \\
& \text { r. r. لازم تتعلّم كل هنه الكـلمات قبل التمرين. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ○. بعد الزواج سافروا إلى اليونان. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 4:TRANSLATION

Give the Arabic equivalent of the following sentences.
ترجم إـمل التالية إلى العربية.

1. We'll go the suq after we visit the ruins.
2. Let's drink a cup of coffee before we go.
3. Before I studied Arabic, I studied French.
4. Before you bargain with a merchant, decide how much you want to pay.
5. He gave him a tip after they arrived at the restaurant.
6. Before renting an apartment, ask what floor it is on.
7. After they learn Arabic, they'll go to Sanaa.
8. After I get (return) home, I'll decide what to do.
9. You (m.) have to finish cleaning the house before they come.
10. Before she went to the Middle East, she had been in Africa.

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY A

Goal:
To be able to use بقلمها and بعدما in appropriate contexts.
Materials: None.
Procedure: 1. Students each prepare a short autobiographical statement which includes use of قبلما and loero, e.g., بعدما تخرجت من المدرسة الثانوية، رحت إلى الجامعة.

Teacher provides students with any necessary vocabulary items.
2. Each student takes five to ten minutes of each class to deliver narrative biography.
3. After each student has turn, teacher summarizes to check on accuracy and comprehension.
4. After each student has a turn, they ask each other the following questions and report to the rest of the class.
ا ا. شو ر رح تعمل تعمل بعلماما تسافر إلى المعهد؟ الشر الأوسط؟

## IV. Negative imperative

The negative command (Don't $\qquad$ !) is formed in Arabic by using the negative particle $ل$ plus the second person (you) form of the verb, e.g.:

Don't pay him more than 1 dinar!
لا تدفع له أكثر من دينار واحد.

Don't be afraid (f.)!

## Don't get in the taxi (pl.)!

لا تر كبوا التاكسي.

## DRILL 5:TRANSFORMATION

التمرين الخامس: تحويل

Change the following imperative sentences to negative imperative.
ادخل »لالا« الناهية على الممل التالية.

## Example

## Write your name!

اكتب اسمك!

## Don't write your name!

لا تكتب اسمك!

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 1 ـ ساومي التاجر! ! } \\
& \text { r. اع اعطيي المفتاح! }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ه. اترك الغرفة! } \\
& \text { 7. روحوا إلى المكتبة! } \\
& \text { V. . . بيع سيارتك! ري } \\
& \text {. . . التععملي قلمك ابلديد! } \\
& \text { 9. } 9 \text {. امشي على طول! } \\
& \text {. ا. اشتري عنب! } \\
& \text { 11. او الول لي شو قال! }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 6:TRANSLATION

التمرين السادس: ترجمة

Give the Arabic.
ترجم !إلى العربية.

1. Don't come back (m.) until he leaves!
2. Don't tell me they bought another car!
3. Don't decide before you talk to her!
4. Don't speak English if you can speak Arabic!
5. Don't take all the suitcases at the same time!
6. Don't give me advice!
7. Don't ask so many questions!
8. Don't go the restaurant by yourself!
9. Don't spend too much time comparing prices!
10. Don't drink from that bottle!
11. Don't use salt!
12. Don't leave yet!

## V. Conditional sentences

Conditional sentences are typically ones that start with the word "if." The "if" clause states a condition and the following clause states a result, e.g., "If you go tomorrow, I'll see you there." There are basically two types of conditions: ones that are possible, or realizable, and ones that are unlikely or impossible (contrary to fact). The word used for "if" in possible conditional clauses is إذا. For contrary-to-fact conditions, the word used for "if" is لو.

Normally, the tense of the verb in the "if" clause is past, whereas the verb in the "result" clause can be in any tense:

If he asks you for six dinars, tell him three.
إذا طلب منك سـت دنانير، قول له ثلاثة.

If you go tomorrow, I'll see you there.
إذا رحت بكرة، رح أشوفك هناك.

The rule about using the past tense in the "if" clause is not absolute, however. Occasionally, in spoken Arabic, the present tense is used:

If I take a taxi, how much should I pay?
إذا آخذ التا كسي، قدّيش لازم أدفع؟

If you (f.) like, we can go together.
إذا تحبّي، ممكن نروح مع بعض.

## $\int$ DRILL 7: COMPREHENSION

Listen to these sentences on the CD and write down the English equivalent. Check your comprehension with the teacher:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r. إذا لازم تشوفوه، اعملوا معه موعد. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 7. إذا لاقيت المفتاح، قولي. } \\
& \text { ا . V } \\
& \text { ^. إذا كنت مـت حـحلة، بمكن أحكي معك بكرة. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 8:TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Arabic:
ترجم البمل التالية إلى اللغة العربية.

1. If you (f.) see him tomorrow, ask him.
2. If he tells me how to get there, I can drive.
3. If she doesn't come soon, we'll have to leave without her.
4. If you (f.) want to talk with us, wait for us in the garden.
5. If we finish today, can we leave tomorrow?
6. If you (pl.) practice, you'll improve.
7. If you (m.) don't try, you won't know.
8. If they come while I'm not here, please thank them.
9. If you (pI.) have no objection, I'd like to rest a little bit.
10. If you (pl.) like, we can take a break now and talk later.

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY B

Goal:
To be able to discuss hypothetical situations.
Materials: None.
Procedure: 1. Teacher asks each student, "What would you do if
a. you get lost in an Arab city?"
b. you want to buy a new car?"
c. you want to practice Arabic?"
2. Students ask the teacher, "What would you do if
a. you want to vacation in California?"
b. you got lost in a foreign city?"
c. you wanted to buy a new television set?"

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY C

Goal:
To be able to respond to negative commands and conditional sentences; to improve and writing.

Materials: Blackboard.
Procedure: 1. Students go to the board one at a time and write down in Arabic a sentence dictated by the teacher.
2. Teacher critiques written sentence, helping student make any necessary corrections by giving instructions in Arabic, using mainly negative imperatives and conditional sentences, e.g.,

- Don't join dāl to the next letter!
- If you write $h \bar{a}^{\prime}$ ' that way, people will think its 'ayn!
- If mīm comes before jīm, you should write it above the jīm.
- Don't forget to dot your $b \bar{a}^{3}$ !


## TASK: SAMPLE DIALOGUE FOR TAXI BARGAINING

a. Most Americans are uncomfortable in a bargaining situation. To get used to the typical give and take, listen to the following dialogue on the CD to see how much you understand. Then listen a second time to see in what wavs the taxi driver pressures Mark to come to his terms, and how Mark manages to stand his ground. After that, study the dialogue and look up any expressions you don t know.
b. As a follow-up task, students think of something they would like to purchase when thev reach the Middle East, and the maximum price they would be willing to pay. Then they should role play their particular scenario, with the teacher as the merchant.


## REVIEW DRILLS

DRILL I:TRANSFORMATION
Transform the following indefinite relative clauses into definite clauses, using

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { يــضي ذلك من تعديل في ابـملة. }
\end{aligned}
$$



This is a letter that came yesterday. $\rightarrow$ This is the letter that came yesterday.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { هني رسالة وصلت امبارح. - هني الرسالة اللي وصلت امبارح. } \\
& \text { 1 ـ اششريته من تاجر عنده علزّ كبير في السوق. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ع. أحبَ أشوف أشياء الما علاقة بالحضارة الملَّية. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## DRILL 2:TRANSLATION

1. These are the things I want to buy.
2. Can you tell me where there's a store that sells flowers?
3. I have a friend who works at the foreign ministry.
4. Are these the keys I have to use?
5. I think I prefer the car that I drove yesterday.
6. Do they have a maid who speaks English?
7. Could you please give me the book you were reading?
8. Who is the person who is responsible for such things?
9. Take the elevator (which is) on your right to the fifth floor.
10. Where's the student ( f .) who came this morning?
11. I didn't read the letters he wrote.
12. We had dinner the same place you (pl.) did.

## DRILL 3: QUESTION AND ANSWER

التمرين الثالث: سؤال وجواب
Respond to the following questions, using ايّا plus a pronoun suffix.
باوب الأسئلة التالية مـتعمالٌ ايّا مع ضمير متصل هِا.

Example
Did he make coffee for you?
عمل لك قهوة؟

No, he didn't make it for me. or Yes, he made it for me.
نعم عمل لي ايّاها. أو أو ما عمل لياها.
ا. اشترت لك مالبس تقليدية؟
r. و جدوا لك جريدة ملّية؟
ז. بدّك فنجان قهوة؟
ع . بدّك نرْة تليفو بِ؟
ه. حمل لك كل الأغراض؟
7. جبت لي الأوراق؟
جابت لك الهدايا؟ . V
^. ضيّعوا له الثنطة اللّي اشتراها امبارح؟
9. عملوا لكم و جبة كويّسة؟؟

$$
\text { - } 1 \text { فتح لك باب الـكتب؟ }
$$

## GLOSSARY

## قائمة مفردات

This glossary lists the vocabulary items that appear in this text. In the Arabic-English section, they are arranged by consonantal root, according to the order of the Arabic alphabet. Derivatives of a particular root, including idioms and set phrases, are listed under that root. In the English-Arabic section, entries are listed in English alphabetical order.

The citation form for verbs includes the past tense, present tense, and verbal noun. Plurals of nouns and adjectives are noted in parentheses after the citation form. Feminine forms and nisha adjectives are not listed separately unless they vary in form .أب -أبو , or meaning from the noun stem. Variant forms are noted with a dash, e.g. Essentially equivalent expressions are indicated by an equals sign (=). Prepositions used in conjunction with a lexical item are noted in parentheses, e.g., / خاف / يخاف . خوف (من) The form (I-X) of the verb is noted next to the English gloss.

## ARABIC-ENGLISH

i
father
to take (I)
other (m.)
other (f.)
أَب - أَبو (آباء)
أَخَخ / يَأْحُذ / أَخْذ

if

March
history; date
Jordan
earth, land
basic, fundamental
professor; sir
Israel
sorry
Alexandria
elevator
Aswan
Asia

October
certain, sure; for sure
assurance
to eat (I)
food

| dish (type of food) | أَكْلَة (-ات) |
| :---: | :---: |
| minus, less | ! |
| thousand | أَلْفْ (آلافف) |
| German | أَلْماني (ألمان) |
| God | اللّه |
| response to مع السالمة | اللّه |
| if you please | اللّه |
| May God keep them. really, honestly | اللّه يُحَلِّهِه. |
| who, which, that (relative pronoun) | إللّي |
| to, toward | ! |
| et cetera | إلى آلخرِهِ |
| etc. | ا |
| mother | اُمُ (أمّهّاتِ) |
| as for | أَّهِ |
| matter, affair | أَمْر (أْمور) |
| prince | أَمير (أُمَراء) |
| emirate | إمارَة (ات) |
| yesterday | أُمْ |
| America | أَمير كا = أَمْرِ |
| American | أَمير كي (أَمير كان = أَمير كيين) |
| if God wills; hopefully | إن شاء الله |
| that (conj.) | إن |
| because | لأَن |
| I | أَنا |
| you (m.) | أَنْ |
| you (f.) | أَنْتِ |
| you (pl.) | أَنْتُمٌ - أَنْتُو |
| feminine | مُؤَنَّ |
| English | إنْكليزي (إنْكليز) |
| welcome (to a place) |  |
| response to أهلا" وسهلا |  |

Europe
first (m.)
first (f.)
first of all, firstly
any; which
suffix pronoun carrier
May
Iran
what
Italian
September
أَيْش = شو
إيطالي (-ين)
in; at; by; with
actually, really
since; inasmuch as
including

without
eggplant
بدون
باذِنْجان
peas
بازيليا = باز يلا
Petra

sea
Bahrain

tip, gratuity
to want; to need (+ pronoun suffix)

no doubt (that)
by all means
oranges
orange (color)
yesterday
cold (adj.)
program; schedule


Basra
good(s)
الْْصرْرَ
potatoes
بَطاطا
melon
mission
بضاعَة (بَضائِع)
بِّاطاعَة (بَضائِع)
after; in (+ time n.)
بَعْد
after ( +v .)
بَعْدما
afterwards; then; later
far (from)
بَعيد (عَن)
some ( +n . or pron.)
together
Baghdad
بَغْداد
steak
tip, gratuity

tomorrow
day after tomorrow
country


بُكْرْة"
بَعْد بُكْرَة بَلَد = بلاد (بالد = بُلْدان)

إْبْن (أَبْنَاء)
paternal cousin (m.)
maternal cousin (m.)
إِبْن عَمَّ
إبْن خال
girl; daughter
paternal cousin (f.)
بِنْت (بَنات)
بنْت عَمَّ
maternal cousin (f.)
brown
tomatoes
Benghazi
building
door; gate

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { بور سعُيد } \\
& \text { بَبْت (بُيو ت) } \\
& \text { بَيْت (بُيو ت) } \\
& \text { بَبَيْ } \\
& \text { أَبْضِ - بَيْضاء - بيض } \\
& \text { بَيْض } \\
& \text { بَبِّع / بَبِع / بَبْع } \\
& \text { مِن بَيْن } \\
& \text { هِّ بِّ بِن } \\
& \text { مبْيِّ }
\end{aligned}
$$

Port Said
house
beige
Beirut
white (m., f., pl.)
eggs
to sell (I)
between
it seems, it appears, apparently
belonging to
merchant, keeper
under, below


Palmyra
to translate $(\mathrm{Q})$
to leave (I)
turquoise تَرَك / يَتُرُك / تَرْكَ

Turkey
nine
nineteen
ninth
nineteenth
ninety
October
November

تِسْعَة عاشِر
تاسِع
تاسِع عَشَر
تn
تِشْر ين الأوَّلَّ
تِشْر ين الثّاني
tired
apples
exactly
July

Tunisia; (city of) Tunis
تونس

ث
culture
ثُقافَة
three
Wh
thirteen

> ثُالْةُ عَشَر
third
thirteenth
ثالِلث عَشَرَ
thirty
one-third

eighty
كُمانين
two
two (f.)
Monday

twelve
اِثنْا عَشَرَ
second
ثاني
secondary
'ُانَوي
twelfth

## ج

mountain


Djibouti
جيبوتي

## $\tau$

to love; to like (I)
until; in order to
to reserve
reserved
Hijaz
size; volume
limit; boundary
limited, set
garden
heat
temperature
hot
letter (of the alphabet); particle
June
bill, invoice
according to
better
to get better, improve (V)
presence (respectful form of address)
you (formal)
civilization, culture
ready; present, current
Hadramout
to put, place (I)
right ( $n$.)
you're right



حرْف (حُروف -أَحْرُف)
خَزيران
government
ruling, governing
to talk; speak (I)
to solve (I)
solution (of a problem)
place; shop
local
nice; pretty; sweet
Helwan
bathroom; bath
praise
Praise be to God; thank goodness
Praise be to God for safety; Glad for your safe return.
red (m., f., pl.)
to blush, turn red
hummos (chickpea puree)
to carry (I)
dialogue
ocean
condition
immediately
condition, state; case
approximately
to try, attempt (III)
impossible

حُكومَة (-ات)


حَلَّ / يَحُلِ
حَلّ (حُلول)
مَحَلّ (-ات)
رَحَلّي
حَلو (-ين) حَلْو ان

حَمّام (-ات)
حَمْد
الْحَمْاُ لِلّه
الْحَمْنُ لِلّه عَلى السّلامَةُ.
news item (sing.); news (pl.)
bread
may I help you
maid
outside, external
abroad
foreign minister
Khartoum
autumn, fall
lettuce
special; private
green (m., f., pl.)
vegetables
script, writing; line
vinegar
gulf
to finish (II)
different (from)
to allow, to let; to keep; to have (s.o.) do (II)
five

fifth
fifteen
خَمْتَ عَشَرَ
fifteenth

fifty
Thursday
to fear, be afraid (of) (I)
maternal uncle
maternal aunt

cucumbers
خِيار
goodness

fine; well
Nothing serious, I hope. (Said when someone brings up
 bad news.)
chicken
the Tigris River

> دَجاج (نَهْر) دِجْلَة تَكْريب
> دَرَجَة (-ات) دَرَجَة الْحَرارَة
> دَرَس / يَدْرُس / دِراسَة
> دَرْس (دُروس) مَدْرَسَة (مَدارس)
> دَرَّس / يُدَرِّس / تَدْرِيس مُدَرِّس (-ين) دَفْتْرَ (دَفاتِرَ ) دَفَع / يَدْفَع / دَفْع دَقِيقة (دَقائق) دَلّ / يَدُلّ / دَلالَة عَلى دِمَشْقْ
Damascus
Doha الدّو حَة

دائِرَة (دَوائرَ)
إداري


دَوْلَ (دُوَلَ)
international
always
December
democratic
dinar

| masculine |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| golden | ذَهَيْكَ |

president; head (of an organization)
to link, tie (I)
Rabat

bad رَديء
rice

j
Zagros (mountains)

to ask (I)
question
official (n.)
reason
Saturday
September
سَّأل / يَسْأَل / سُوَّال
سُؤَال (أَسْئِلَة)
مَسْؤؤول (-ين)
سَبَب (أَسْباب)
(يُوْم) السَّبْت (المبابِ
بَّبْتْ
سَبْعَة
seven


| sixty | صِّيّن |
| :---: | :---: |
| sixth | سادِس |
| sixteenth | سادِس عَشَر |
| carpet, rug | سَجّادَة (سَجّاد) |
| Swahili | سَو احيلي |
| dam | سَدّ (سُدود) |
| happy |  |
| good night | لَلْةِ سِعِدَّة |
| Saudi Arabia | السَّعو |
| Saudi | سَعودي (-ين) |
| to help, to assist (III) | ساعَد / يُساعِد / / مُساعِدَّهِ |
| price, cost | سِعْر (أَسْعار) |
| to travel (III) | سافَرَ / يُسافِر / سَفِّ |
| ambassador | سَفِير (سُفَراء) |
| embassy | سِفِارَة (-ات) |
| trip | سَفْرْهِ |
| Socotra | سُقُطْرَة |
| sugar | س, |
| to close (II) |  |
| closed | ركـر |
| living, residing | ساكِن (-ين) |
| knife | سِّكِّن (سكاكين) |
| sultan | سُلْطان (سَاطين) |
| sultanate | سِنْطِّة |
| salad | سِلَطِّه (-ات) |
| corps, cadre; wire | سِلْك (أَسْاكك) |
| peace | سَامٌ |
| to greet; to keep safe (II) | يُسَاْمِ / تَسْليم / سَلْم |
| May God keep you safe. | اللّهُ يُسَلْمَكِ |
| Peace be with you. |  |
| expression of surprise | يا سَاملا |

safety
سَالمَة
farewell
Islam
Muslim
to receive (VIII)
to hear (I)
fish
name; noun
year
easy

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { مُسْسِمْ (-ين) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { إِشْتَكم / يَسْتَلِم / إِسْتِلام } \\
& \text { سَمِع / يَسْمْعَع / سَمْع } \\
& \text { سَمَكَ (أَسْماك) } \\
& \text { اسِنَة (سنَوات (أَسْماء) - سِنين) } \\
& \text { سَهْل } \\
& \text { أسْوَد - سوْدواء - سود } \\
& \text { السّو دان } \\
& \text { ساق / يُسوق / سوْق } \\
& \text { سوق (أَسْاق) } \\
& \text { سينَما }
\end{aligned}
$$

bad
Mr., sir
policy; politics
political
hour; clock; wristwatch
distance
to drive
market (f.)
to bargain (III)
car
movies, cinema

## ش

tea
شُاي
affair, matter
شَأْن (شُؤو ن)
window
peninsula
winter
person
personally
to drink (I)
soup
sheet
honor
The pleasure is mine.
to honor (s.o.) (II)
to be honored (V)
Pleased to meet you.
east
to buy (VIII)
people (of a nation)
to work (VIII)
apartment
doubt (n.)
doubtless
to thank (for) (I)
thanks, thank you
Don't mention it.
problem
sun
sunny
include (I)
north; left (directions)
suitcase, briefcase
month
famous
what
consultation
to see; look (I)
شَمْل / يَشْمَمَل / شَمَل = شُمول
شَمْل / يَشْمَمَل / شَمَل = شُمول
شِمال
شِمال
شَنْطَة (شُنُطْ
شَنْطَة (شُنُطْ
شَهْر (أشْهُر، شُهور
شَهْر (أشْهُر، شُهور
مَشْهور
مَشْهور
شو
شو
مَشْوْرَرَ (-ات)
مَشْوْرَرَ (-ات)
شاف / يَشوف / شوف
شاف / يَشوف / شوف
fork
a little (bit)
thing, something
everything
anything
sheikh
morning
morning
good morning
response
boy
true; really; correct
bon appétit
desert
plate, dish
friend
to spend (I)
difficult
elevator
small; young
class
page
zero
yellow (m., f., pl.)
determined
industry; craft
Sanaa
picture
Somalia

شَوْكة (شُوَكَ)
شْوْي
شَيْء (أَشْيْاء)
كل شَيْء
أَيْ شَيْء
شَيْخِ (شُيوخ)
to become; happen (I)
summer

صار / يَصير / مُصير
صَيْف
صيين (-ين)
(صَوالين)
suburb
to hit; to dial (I)
bank (of a river)
the West Bank
light ( n .)
to lose (II)
guest
addition
in addition to
additional
strait (s)


الضَّفْة الْغَرْبَّة

ضيَّع / يُضيَيِّع / تَضْييع أِّي ضَيْن (ضُيونِ) إضافة
بإِإِافَة إلى
إضافي
مَضيق (مَضايق = مُضائقِ)

## b

table
naturally, of course
floor, story (of a building)
Tripoli
unexpected event; emergency
road, way
way, method, manner
food
restaurant
weather
to request, seek (I)
request ( n .)

طاولة (-ات) طَعْعاً
 طَرَابُبُس طارئَة (طَوارِئ) طَريقَ (طُرُقَ) طَريقَة (طُرُق)



طَقْس طَلَب (-ات)
student


ظ
to think; to suppose (I)
noon
afternoon
Dharan
Taurus (mountains)
straight (ahead)
tall; long
all right, fine, okay
airplane
airport
to get to know, become acquainted with (V) well-known (for)

Iraq
military
ten
tenth
twenty
dinner

الْعِراق اقعرو (حن) با

juice
storm
capital (city)
vacation, time off


عاصِمَة (عَواصِم)
عُطْلَة
bad
off work, on vacation
to give (IV)
great
pardon, excuse me; you're welcome (in response to أشكر)
Aqaba


أَعْطى / يُعْطي / إعْطاء
عَعْفْ
الْعْقَبَة
to believe, think (VIII)
reasonable
relationship
world
information
information, informing
to learn (V)
announcement
on; upon
اِعْتَقَد / يَعْتَقِد / /اعْتْقِاد
مَعْقون
عَاقةة (-ات)
عالَّم (عَوالِم)
مَعْلومات


إغْلان (ات)
come (imp.)
high
paternal uncle
aunt (paternal)
public; general (adj.)

تَعال
عالي
عَمّ (أَعْمام)
عَمَّة (-ات)
عامّ

## colloquial Arabic

age, lifespan
عُمْر (أَعْمَار)
to do; make; work (I)
to use (X)
used
Oman
عُمان
Amman
عَمّان
grapes
at, at the place of (+ pron. suffix $=$ to have $)$
address; title
to mean (I)
well, that is; sort of
institute
habit, custom
usually
borrowed (from)

lunch
west
Morocco

cloudy
clouds
so, thus; and

empty; occupied
فاضي
breakfast


ق
Cyprus

old; ancient
introduction
advanced
to decide (II)
to read (I)
near, close (to)
approximately
to compare (III)
part, section
to be split (into); be divided (VII)
to intend, mean (I)
economy; economics
short
to spend (time) (I)
Qatar
base; (grammar) rule
little, few
traditional
pen; pencil
dictionary
bottle
consul
canal; channel
Cairo

قَضى / يَقْضي / قَضاء
قارَن / يُقارِن / مُقارَنَة
قِسْم (أَقْسامَ)


قَصَد / يَقْصِد / قَصْد
 قَطرَ قاعِدَهة (قَو اعِد) قَلِل (قِالال)


ك
cup; glass
كَأٌس (-ات)
kibbee (baked ground lamb)
big; great
to write (I)
book
office
much, many; very
chair
noble, generous


كَتَبِ / يَكْتُبِ / كِتابَة
كِتاب (كتُب)
رَكْتُب (مكاتِب)
كثير (كَثار)
كُرْسي (كَرَاسي)
كريع (كُرْماء)
for your sake
كِرْمالِكُ
enough ( n .)
enough (adj.)
all; every, each
everything

speaking
word
to speak (V)
how much, how many
also


كالام
كَلِمَة (-ات)
تَكَنْمْ / يَتَكَمْ / تَكَمُمْ


December
كانون الأوَّل
January
كانون الثّاني
Kuwait
squash كو سا
to be (I)
good
how

attaché
spoon
language
linguistic
to find; encounter (III) لاقى / يُلاقي / مُلاقاة
when, at the time when لَّما

London
if (contrary to fact)
if you permit; please
green beans

color
لَوْن (أَلْوان)
Libya

why
the Litani River

(نَهْرْ اللَّيطاني
nighttime, night (in general)
night (individual)
good night
tonight
lemons
لَلْنَة (لَيالي)
لَيْلَة سُعيدَة
اللْْلْمَ
لَيْمون
not; that which, what
exclamation of surprise
it makes no difference
March
Malta
ما شاء اللّه!
ما يُحالِف
مارْس
مالطا / مالطَة
May
meter
interesting
when (interrog.)
like, as
example
for example
examination, test
period of time
city


مِثال (أَمْثِلَة) مَثَلوْ

اِمْتِحان (-ات) مُدَّةَ (مُلَده)
مَدينَة (مُلُن)
woman
drill
to practice $(\mathrm{V})$
Christian
Muscat
evening
not (negates $n$. and adj.)
not bad
to walk; go (I)
hallway, corridor

## Egypt

last; past
rain
rainy
with; to have with
you are right
it doesn't matter, it's all right
Mogadishu
Mecca
possibly, maybe; it is possible
salt
king
queen
kingdom
from; than; of
grateful
objection
professional; vocational
Manama
dead
Mauritania

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { إمْرَأة (نساء = نسْوان ) } \\
& \text { تَمْرين (تَمارين) } \\
& \text { تَمَرَّن / يَتَمرَّن / تَمَرُّن }
\end{aligned}
$$

مَسيحي (-ين)
مَسْتْطْ
مَساء
مِشْ
مِشْ بُطّال
مَشى / يَمْسْي / مَشي
مَمْشَى (مَماشي)


مِصْر
mauve; purple
water (f.)
excellent
mile
=
مُمْتَاز (ين)
mile
who (interrog.)

Nejd
نَبْدْ
we
to descend, go down (I)
to reduce, lower; to drop (s.o. or isth. off) (II)
appropriate
women
half
advice
region, area
to look, gaze (I)
view
to wait (VIII)
cleaning (n.)
organization, arrangement
sleepy
yes
the Nafud
self; same
indefinite noun
river


نَكِرَة
نَهْرْ (أَنْهار)
daytime
development
Nouakchott
deputy

deputy chief of mission
light ( $n$.)
صَبَاح الحير response to
sort, kind, type
November
to deal with; eat a meal (VI)
April

g
and; while
duty
Don't mention it. (response to اشُشرا

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { نائِب رَئيس الْعْثْةَ } \\
& \text { نور (أنْوار) } \\
& \text { صَباح النّور } \\
& \text { نَوْعِ (أَنْواع) } \\
& \text { نوفمبْر } \\
& \text { تَناوَل / يَتَناوَل / تَناوُل } \\
& \text { نيسان }
\end{aligned}
$$

هِكِيَّة (هَدايا)
هذا (هذول)
هذي (هدول)
هذاك (هذولاك)
هذيك (هذولاك)


هُناك
8


هي
هَيْك
مِشْ هَيْك؟
meal

to arrive (at); reach (a place) (I)
clear
to explain, clarify (II)
subject, topic
national
employee; official
appointment
good luck
to agree (on) (VIII)
time
at the present time
to fall; be located (I)
boy; child
state (U.S.); province the United States
where (interrog.)

## ي

attention-getter, particle of address
exclamation of surprise: Wow! Good grief!
يا سُاوم!
يَد (أَيْدي)
hand (f.)
manual (adj.)

left (direction)
يَسار
right (direction)
Yemen
January
July


day
today


June

## ENGLISH-ARABIC

إنكليزي-عربي

A
to be able (I)
about, approximately
about, concerning
above; over
Abu Dhabi
according to
to get acquainted (with) (IV)
actually, in fact
addition
in addition to
address; title; headline

يا

Aden عَدَن
administrative
advanced
advice
affair, matter
to be afraid (of), fear (I)
Africa
after ( +n.$)$
after ( +v .)
afternoon
afterwards; then
age
agency


Agency for International Development
to agree (on) (VIII)
aid, assistance
to aid, assist, help (III)
air, atmosphere
airplane
Alexandria
Algeria
all
alright, okay
alone (+ pron.)
also, too
always
ambassador
America
American
Amman
among
announcement
annoyance, bother


April
Aqaba


Asia آسيا

## Asian

to ask (s.o. eth.) (I)
to ask for, request (I)
to assist, help, aid (III)
assurance
Aswan
at
at the present time
the Atlantic Ocean
the Atlas Mountains
attaché
August
aunt (maternal)
(paternal)
autumn
away from

## B

bad
not bad
Baghdad
Bahrain
bank (of a river)
to bargain (III)
base (military); rule
basic, fundamental
Basra
bathroom; bath
to be (I)
beans, green
fave beans
beautiful, pretty
because
لأَن
to become; happen (I)
ساعَد / يُساعِد / مُساعَدَة تَأكيد
أَسْوْ
في، عِنْد


الْمُحيط الأطلْمَي
جبال الأطلْدَ
مُلُحَقِ (-ين)


خالَة (-ات) عَمَّة (-ات)

خَريف
عَنْ

## 

before ( +n .)
before ( +v .)
before, previously

between
big, large; old (human age)
bill, invoice
black
blue
besides, in addition to
better, best
to get better, improve (V)
bon appétit
book
border, limit



## C

cadre, corps
Cairo
calendar
can, to be able (I)
can, could, may
canal; channel
capital
car
carpet, rug
carrots
to carry (I)
Casablanca
center
certain, sure
certainly
chair
chance, opportunity
to change (s. th.) (II)
to change money (I)
change, coins

سِلْك (أَسْالك)، فَيْلَك (فَيالِكَ)
الْقَاهِرَّ
تَقْوِيم (تَقاويم)
قَدَر / يَقْدَر / قُدْرْهَ = مَمْلْرَهَ مُمْكْكِ
قَناة (قَنَوات)
عاصِمَة (عَواصِمَ)
سَّارَة (-ات)
سجّادَة (سَجّاد)
جَزَر
حَمْل / يَحْمِل / حَمْل
دار الْبْيْضاء
مَرْكز (مَراكِز)
أَكيد
طَبْاً، أَكيد، بكُلَ تَأْكيد كُرْسِي (كَرَاسي) فُرْصَة (فُرَص) غَيَّرَ / يُغِيِّ / تَغْيرِ
صرَف / يَصْرْف / صرْفَ فُراطَة رخخيص
chicken
child

clothes
clouds
cloudy
coffee
مَّابِس
clear
ساعَة (-ات)
close to, near
to close, shut (II)
closed
colloquial Arabic
color
to come (I)
coming
ass, classroom

## تَنْظِيف

cleaning (n.)
واضِح
clock; wristwatch


corridor, hallway
cousin (m.) paternal
cousin (m.) maternal
cousin (f.) paternal
cousin (m.) maternal
craft; industry

cucumbers
culture ثُقَفَة
cup
current, present
custom, habit
عادَة (-ات)
customer, client
زَبون (زَبائِن)
Cyprus

D
dam
Damascus
daughter
day
day after tomorrow
day before yesterday
today

daytime
dead
to deal with; treat; eat a meal (VI)
December
to decide (II)
degree (amount)
delicious
to deliver, transport (II)
department

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { مَيِّت (أَمْوات) } \\
& \text { تَناوَل / يَتَناوَل / تَناوُل } \\
& \text { كانون الأَوَّل = ديسَمْبر } \\
& \text { قَرَّر / يُقَرِّرِ / تَقْرير } \\
& \text { دَرَجَةَ (-ات) } \\
& \text { لَذين } \\
& \text { (ت) } \\
& \text { لَذين } \\
& \text { وُصَّل / يُوْصِّل / تَوْصيل } \\
& \text { دائِرَةَ (دَوائِر) }
\end{aligned}
$$

deputy; representative
deputy chief of mission
to descend (I)
desert (f.)
to desire, want (IV)
determined
development
Dhahran
to dial (a phone number) (I)
dialogue
dictionary
different
difficult
dinar
dinner
diplomat; diplomatic
directly, right away
dish (food)
dish (plate)
distance
distributed
disturbance, annoyance
Djerba
Djibouti
to do; make (I)
Doha
Don't mention it; You're welcome
door, gate
doubt
to doubt (I)
doubtless, without a doubt

drill, exercise
to drink (I)
to drive (I)
Dutch
duty
each, every
earth, land
east
the Middle East
easy
to eat (I)
to eat a meal (VI)
economy; economics
economic; economist
eggplant
eggs
Egypt
eight
eighteen
eighth
eighty
elevator
eleven
eleventh
embassy
emergency
emirate
employee
empty

## $E$

تَمْرين (تَمارين)
شَرَب / يَشْرَب / / شُرْبَ ساقَ / يَسوق / سوْق هو لُنْدي

واجب (-ات)

```
بيض
أَرْض (أراضي)
شَرْق
الشَّرْق الأَوْسَط
```

to encounter, meet, find (III)

> لاقى / يُلاقي / مُلاقاة
enough, adequate (adj.)
كافي
enough (n.)
to enter (I)
et cetera (etc.)
the Euphrates River
Europe
evening
good evening
response
ever; at all
everything
exactly
examination, test
excellent
except
excuse me, pardon me
existent, present
موْجّود (-ين)
expensive
external
eye


F
to fall; be located (I)
fall, autumn
family
famous
far (from)
fare, fee
father
to fear (I)
February

feminine
the Fertile Crescent
few, little
fifteen
fifteenth

## خحامِس عَشَر

fifth
fifty
to find (I; III)
to finish (II)
وَجَد / يَجاد / وُجود - لاقى / يُلاقي / مُلاقاة خَاْص / يُخَلِّص / تَخْليص
first
at first, first (appos.)
أَوَّل
أَوَّلا
fish
سَـَمْكَ (أَسْماكَ)
five
fixed, limited
floor, story (of a building)
flower
fluently بطلاقة
food
for; to $\square$
for example, for instance
foreign; foreigner
foreign, external
foreign minister
Foreign Service Institute
fork
شَوْكَة (شُوَكَ)
forty
أرْبْعين
four
fourteen
fourteenth
رابِع عَشَرُ
fourth
one-fourth, one quarter
free (unoccupied)

French

فَرَنْسي (-ين)<br>(مَرْمْمُ) الْجُمْعَة<br>صَديق (أَصْدِقاء)

Friday
friend
from
fruit

## G

garden
geography
German
to get, receive (VIII)
Gibraltar
gift, present جُعْرُ افِيَة
أَلْمَانِي (-ين = أَلْمان)
إِسْتَم / يَسْتِلِم / إِمْتَام ام
جَبَّل طارق
هَكِيَّة (هَدايا)
girl
to give (IV)
glass (vessel)
to go (I)
gold
good, goodness (n.)
good morning
response
good (adj.)
Good luck!
Good grief!
government
governing, ruling
grammar rules قَواعِد
grandfather
grandmother
grape leaves
يا سالم! حُكومَة (-ات)
حا كِم (-ين) جَدّ (جُدود، أَجْداد)

جَدَّة (-ات)
grapes
grateful
gratuity, tip
gray
great
green
guest
gulf


## H

habit, custom
Hadramaut
half
hallway
hand
handwriting
hard, difficult
to have
he

pronoun + عِنْد
هُو
heat
Hebrew
hello
Helwan
to hear (I)
to help, assist, aid
help, assistance, aid
her (obj. pron.)
(possessive pron.)
here
Mt. Hermon
high
the Hijaz

حَرارَة
عِبْرا اني
مَرْحْبَا
حَكْوان
سَمِع / يَسْمْع / سَمْع / سِعْ ساعَد / يُساعِد / مُساعَدَهِ مُساعَدَةُ (-ات)

4


هُنا
جَبَل الشَّيَّخ
عالي
الْحِجاز
him $\qquad$
his

## 4-

history
holiday
on holiday, off work
honor (n.)
to honor (II)
to be honored (V)
hopefully

> تاريخ عُطْلِة (عُطَلِّ
> شَرَفْ
> شَرَّف / يُشَرِّف / تَشْرِيف
> تَشَرَّف / يَتَشَرَّف / تَشَرُّف إنْ شاء اللّه
hot
حارّ
hotel
hour
ساعَة (-ات)
house
بَيْت (بُيو ت)
how
How are you?
How much? How many?
humid
humidity
hummos

hundred
in a hurry
husband
in, inside; at
في
in order to
to include (I)
indeed

indefinite noun
industry
information, data
informing, information
U.S. Information Agency
institute
to intend, mean (I)
to interest, concern (I)
interesting
صِناعَة (-ات)
orman مَعْلومات
international
introduction
Iraq
Islam
island
Israel
Italian

January
كانون الثّاني = يَناير
Jerash
Jerusalem
Jidda
Jordan
juice

## July

June
just (now)
حَزَّريان = يونْيو
just as you like
to keep; let, permit; have (s.o.) do (III)
key, opener
Khartoum
kilometer
kind, nice
kindness
That's nice of you.
kind, sort
king
kingdom
$K$
خَفَلْى / يُخَلّْي / تَخْلِيَة
مِفْتاح (مَفاتيح)
الْخَرْطوم
knife
to know (I)
Kuwait

## $L$

land, earth (f.)
language
last; past (adj.)
leader
leadership
to learn (V)
to leave (I)
Lebanon
left (direction)
lemons
lesson
to let, permit; keep (II)
letter, message

أرُضْ (أَراضمي)
لُغَة (-ات)


قِيادَة
تَعَلْمْ / يَتَعَلْم / تَعَلُّم
تَرَك / يَترُكُ / تَرْكُ
لُبْنان
يَسار، شِمال
لَيْمون

lettuce
Libya
light (n.)
like, as
to like, love (I)
limit, boundary
limited, set
line


حَدّ (حُدود)
مَحْدود
خَطّ (خُطوط)
linguistic لُغَوي
list
قائِمَة (قَوائم)
the Litani River
little, small; young
a little bit
نَهْرْ اللّيطاني
صَغير (صغغار)
شُوْي
living, residing
local
London
ساكِن (-ين)
مَحَكّي (-ين)
London
كَنْدَن
long; tall
to look (I)
to lose (II)
lunch
Luxor
maid
to make; do (I)
Malta مالطا
man
Manama
manual (adj.)
يَدَوي
many, much
March
آذار = مارِس

| market (f.) | سوق (أُسْوْ |
| :---: | :---: |
| married | مُتَزَوِّج (-هن) |
| to get married (V) | تَزَوُّج / يَتْزَوَّج / تَزْوَّج |
| masculine | مُذْ كِ |
| Masira | مُصيرّة |
| Mauritania | موريتانيا |
| mauve; purple | موف |
| May | أيار = مايو |
| maybe, possibly | مُدْكِن |
| me | - . |
| meal | وَجْبْة (-ات) |
| to mean, intend (I) | عَنى / يَعْنِ / مَعْن، قَصْد / يَقْصِد / قَصْد |
| meaning ( n .) | مُعْنى (مُعاني) |
| meat | لَّهْمْ |
| Mecca | \% |
| medium (adj.) | وَسُ |
| melon | بصيج |
| menu | قائِمَة الطُّامِ = ليستَّة |
| merchant, shopkeeper | تاجر (تُجّار) |
| message; letter | رسالة (رَسائِل) |
| meter (measure of light) | مِتْر (أَمْتار) |
| mile | ميل (أَمْمال) |
| military | عَسْكْري (-ين) |
| mineral (adj.) | مَعْدَنِ |
| minister (of state) | وَزير (وزَرْاء) |
| ministry | وزِارَهِ |
| minus, less | إلا |
| minute | دَقِيقَّ (دقائِق) |
| Miss | آنسَ |
| mission | بعْثْة (-ات) |
| Mr., sir | سِبِّد (أَسْبِاد، سادِّ) |


| moderate (adj.) | مُعْتُدِل |
| :---: | :---: |
| Mogadishu | مُقديشو |
| moment | لَحْظَة (-ات) |
| Monday | يَوْمْ الإِنْتْنْ |
| money | قلوس |
| month | شَهْرْ (أشْهُر - شُهور) |
| morning | صَباح |
| good morning | صَبَاح الْحَيْر |
| response | صَبَاح النّور |
| this morning | هذا الصّباح |
| Morocco | الْفْرب |
| mother | اُمٌ (أمّهُّات) |
| mountain | جَبَل (جبال) |
| movies | مينما |
| Mrs., madam |  |
| much, many | كَير (كثِّار) |
| How much? How many? | كَمْ |
| Muscat | مَسْقِط |
| museum | مَتحفِ (مَتَاحِ) |
| Muslim | مُسْبِم (-ين) |
| must, have to, need to | لازم |
| my (suffix pron.) | ي |

## $N$

| name; noun | إِّمْ (أسْماء) |
| :---: | :---: |
| national | ورُطّي (-ين) |
| naturally, of course | ط |
| near | قريب مِنْ |
| necessary; it is necessary | لازم |
| need to, must, have to | لازم |
| neither . . nor | لا . . . ولا |

Nejd
نَسْدْ
never
new جَديد (جُلُد)
news
newspaper خَبَر (أَهْبار)
next, coming
nice (of people)
night
tonight جَر يدَة (جَرَائِد)
good night
لَيْلَة سَعِيدَة
response
لَمْلَة سَعِيَة
the Nile River
نَهْرْ النّيل
nine تسْعْة
nineteen
ninety
ninth
تاسِع
no
noble, distinguished
noon
afternoon

north
not (negates verbal sentence,
(فيه، مع) عند
L
not (negates equational sentence)
not bad
notebook
notion, idea, thought
Nouakchott
November
now, just now
number, numeral
objection
obliged, grateful


Oman عُمان
on, upon
on the way
on the top of, above
one
only, just
only (sole)
open (adj.)
to open (I)
opportunity, chance; break
orange (color)
oranges
organization, arrangement
other
our (pron. suffix)
UL . .

## P

page

## Palmyra

paper, piece of
pardon, pardon me
part, section
past
to pay; push (I)
peace
peace be with you
response
Peace Corps
peas
pen; pencil
peninsula
people (of a nation)
people (in general)
pepper
period of time
to permit, let; keep (II)
person
personally
Petra
pharonic
phone (n.)
to phone
picture; photo
pink
place (n.)

صَفْحَة (صَفَحات)
 تَتْمُرْ
ورَرَقَة (أَوْراق) عَفوْ قِسْم (أَقْسام)


وعَلَيْكُمْ السَامْ

بازيال = بازيليا
قَلَم (أَقْلام)
شِبْه جَز يرَة
شَعْب (شُعوب)
ناس


مُلَّة (مُلُدَ)
خَلَّى / يُخَلَّي / تَخْلِيَةِ


شَخْصِّنا

plate, dish
to please (IV)
please (requesting)
(offering)
if you please
plural
to point (to), indicate (I)
police
politics, policy
political
Port Said
porter, bellhop
possible
as much as possible
possibly, maybe
to practice $(\mathrm{V})$
praise
Praise be to God
present, gift
present, current
present, existant
president, chief
pretty, beautiful
price, cost
prince
princess
private; special, particular
problem
professional; vocational
professor
اُسْهْتِ (أَساتِذَة)
program, schedule
public; general
to push; pay (I)
to put (I)
the Pyramids

## Q

Qatar
قَطَرْ
quarter (fraction)
queen
question

## R

Rabat
to raise (I)
to reach (a place), arrive (at) (I)
to read
ready
real, true; really
reason
reasonable
to receive, get (VIII)
red
region, area
relation, relationship
relative, relation
to relax, rest (X)
to rent (X)
republic
to request, ask for (I)
to reserve (I)
reservation

reserved
residing, living
responsible
restaurant
to return (I)
right ( $n$.)
you're right
right away, right now
right (direction)
right, correct, true
river
Riyadh
road, way
rug, carpet
ruins, antiquities
rule; base (military)
ruling, governing
Russian
salad
salt
same; self
the same thing
Sanaa
Saturday
Saudi Arabia
to say (I)
school
script (writing)
sea

مَحْجوز
ساكِن (-ين)
مَسْؤون (-ين)
مَطْعْم (مُطاعِم)
رُجوعَ / يَرْجِع / رَجَع
حَقّ (حُقوقو)
مَعَك حَقِ
حالاً = رَّأُ
يَمين
صَحيح = صَحّ
نَهْ (أَنْهار)
الرِّياض
طَريق (طُرقّق)
سَجّادَة (سَجّاد)
آثار
قاعِدَة (قَواعِد)
حاكِم (-ين)
روسي (روس)


سَبَططة (-ات)


season; chapter
second
secondary
secretary of state; foreign minister
section, part
to see, look (I)
self; same
to sell (I)
sentence
September
service
seven
seventeen
seventh
seventy
several
she
sheet
sheikh
short
to show, indicate, point (to) (I)
similar to, like
simple
Sinai
since, because
since, as long as
singular
sir, Mr.
sister
to sit (I)
situation, condition

six
sixteen
sixth
sixty


Spanish
إِسْباني، إِسْبْيْوِي (-ين = إسبان)
sleepy
نَعْسـان (-ين)
to speak (V), (I)
special; private
to spend (I)
صرَف / يَصْرِف / صرَفْ، قَضى / يَقْضي / قضاء
splendid
to be split, be divided (VII)
spoon

spring (season)
squash
state (country) دَوْلَة (دُوْلَ)
state (U.S.) (province) ولاية (-ات)
still, yet; not yet
storm
straight (ahead)
strait (s)
street
student
to study (I)
stuffed
subject, topic
suburb
such, such as
Suez
sufficient, enough
sugar
مَضِيق (مَضايق، مضائِق) شارِ ع (شُوّارِع) طالِب (طُلاب)
دَرَس / يَدْرُس / دِراسَة
رُحْشِي
مْوْضو ع (موَاضيع)
ضاحِيَة (ضَواحي)


كافي، كِفايَة
سُكرُ
suitable, appropriate
suitcase, briefcase
sultan
sultanate
summer
sun
Sunday
sunny
to suppose; think (I)
sure, certain, for sure
Swahili
sweet; nice; pretty
Syria

## $T$

to take (I)
to talk, speak (I), (V)
Tangiers
the Taurus Mountains
tea
to teach (II)
teacher (m.)
teacher (f.)
team
telephone ( n .)
to telephone (Q)
to tell (I)
temperature

```
أَخَذ / يَأْحُذ / أَخْذ
```



``` طُنْجَة
جِبال طوروس شاي
دَرَّس / يُدَرِّس / تَدْريس مُدَرِّسِ (-ين) مُدَرِّسَة (-ات)
```

فَريق (فِرَق)
تَليفون (-ات)
تَلْفَنَ / يُتَلْفِن / تَلْفَنَة
قال / يَقول / قَوْل (ل)
ten
tenth
test, exam
than
to thank (for) (I)
thank you
thanks a lot
that (one) (m.)
that (one) (f.)
that (sub. conj.)
that which, who (rel. pron.)
their
them
then, after that
عَشَرَةْ
عاشِر
امْتْتحان (-ات)
هِ

شُكْرُاً جَزيلاً
هذاك (هذولاك)
هذيك (هذو لاك)

they
thing, something
anything
everything
to think (VIII), (II)
thinking (adj.)

third ثالِث
one-third ثُلْثْ
thirteen ثالُثَة عَشَرُ
thirteenth
thirty
this (m.) ثَاظثين
this (f.)
those
thousand

three
هذا


Thursday

thus, so
to tie, link (I)
the Tigris River
time (in general)
period of time
tip, gratuity
tired
تَعْبان (تَعْبانين)
to, for; belonging to
رَبَط / يَرْبط / رَبْط
نَهْرْ دِجْلَة
وَقْت (أَوْقات)
مُدَّة (مُلَده)

to, toward
today
tomatoes
بَنَدور رَه
بُكْرَة
day after tomorrow بَعْدُ بُكْرْة
tonight
too, also
topic, subject
tradition
 تَقْليد (تَقَاليد)
training
to translate $(\mathrm{Q})$
to travel (III)
tray
to treat, deal with (VI)
trip
Tripoli
تَدْرِيب
تَرْجَمَ / يُترْجمـم / تَرْجَمَة
سافَر / يُسافِر / سَفَر

> صِنيَّة (صَواني)

تَناوَل / يَتَناوَل / تَناوُل
سَفْرَة (-ات)

true
to try, attempt (III)
Tuesday يَوْمْ الثلانثاء
Tunis; Tunisia
Turkey
turquoise تُرْكِيا
twelve
حاوَله / يُحاوِل / مُحاوَكَّة

## twelfth

twenty
two
ثاني عَشَرَ عِشْر ين اِثْنَيْن
uncle (maternal)
uncle (paternal)
under, below
to understand, comprehend (I)
united
خال (أَخْوال) عَمّ (أَعْمْام)

تَحْت

the United Arab Emirates
the United States
university
جامِعَة (-ات)
unoccupied, empty, free
فاضي
until
urgent
us (pron. suffix)
to use (X)
usually

## $v$

vacation, day off on vacation, off work
valley, wadi
veal
vegetables
very
view
vinegar
to visit (I)
vocabulary
volume, size

w
to wait; await (VIII)
to walk; go (I)
to want, desire (IV)
watch, wristwatch; clock
water (f.)
way, path, road
on the way
by the way
we
إنْتُظَر / يَنْتِرِ / / إْنْظِار
مشى / يَمْشي / مَشُي
أَراد / يُريد / إرادَهَ، بدّ ساعَة (-ات)
م طُريق (طُرُق)

في الطرّريق
عَلى فِكْرَهْ نَحْنُ。 طقس يَوْمْ الأرْبعاء
week
welcome (to a place)

white
when (interrog.)
which (interrog.), what
which, who (rel. pron.)
who (interrog.)
مين
who (rel. pron.)

winter
to wish, want (IV)
with
without
woman
إمْرْأَةَ (نساء = نسْوْ
word
كَلِمَة (-ات)
to work (VIII)
إِثْتَغل / يَشْتَغِل / شُغْل
world
worse; worst
to write (I)
عَالَم (عَوالِم)
أُسْوْأ
كَتَ / يَكْتُب / كِتابَة
year
سنَة (سَنوات، سِنين)
yellow

Yemen
yes (formal)
yes (informal)


## APPENDIX I

## Names of the Months and Months of the Islamic Calendar

## NAMES OFTHE MONTHS

| Janurary | كانون الثّاني | يُناير |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| February | شُبُاط | فبر اير |
| March | آذار | مـارس |
| April | نيسان | أبريل |
| May | أَيار | مايو |
| June | حَزيران | يونيو |
| July | تَمّوز | يوليو |
| August | آب |  |
| September | أَيْلول | كِبْتْ |
| October | تشْرْ | اكتو بر |
| November | تِشْرين الثّانِ | نوفْبر |
| December | كانون الأُوَّل | ديسمبر |

MONTHS OF THE ISLAMIC CALENDAR


## APPENDIX 2

## Summary Verb List by Form and Verbal Noun

Items marked with an asterisk are exceptions to the general rule.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Form I } \\
& \text { ساق / يسوق / سِياقَة / سَواقَة } \\
& \text { شَكَرُ / يَشْكُر / شُُكْر }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { شَمِل / يَشْمْل / شَمْل } \\
& \text { شاف / يَشوف / شُوْف } \\
& \text { صرَف / يَصْرْ / صرَفْ } \\
& \text { صار / يَصير آمَصير } \\
& \text { ضَرَب / يَضْرب / ا ضَرْب } \\
& \text { طَلَب / يُطلْبِ / طَلَب } \\
& \text { ظَّنّ / يَظُّنّ / ظَنّ } \\
& \text { عَرَف / يَعْرِ / مَعْرَة } \\
& \text { عَمِل / يَعْمَلَ / عَمَلِ } \\
& \text { عَنى / يَعْني / مَعْنى } \\
& \text { فَتَح / يَفْتَح / فَتْح } \\
& \text { فَهِم / يَفْهَم / فَهْمْ } \\
& \text { 部/ } \\
& \text { تَرك / يَتْرُك / تَرْكَ } \\
& \text { جَلَس / يَجْلِس / جُلوس } \\
& \text { جاب / يَجيب / جيب } \\
& \text { حَبْ / يَحِبّ / حبّ } \\
& \text { حَطّ / يَحُطّ / حَطّ } \\
& \text { حَكى | يَحْكَ احْ احكي } \\
& \text { حَلّ / يَحُلّ ا حَلّ } \\
& \text { حَمَل / يَحْمْل / حَمْل } \\
& \text { خحاف / يَخاف / خَوْف } \\
& \text { دَرَس / يَدْرُس / دَرْس } \\
& \text { دَفَع / يَدْفْعَ / دَفْع } \\
& \text { دَلَّ / يَدُلّ / دَلالَّة } \\
& \text { ربَط / يَرْبُ / رَبْط } \\
& \text { رَجَعَ / يَرْجِع / رُجوع ع ربط }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { قَرَأ / يَقْرْأ / مِرَاءة } \\
& \text { قَصَد / يَقْصِد / قَصْد } \\
& \text { قال / يَقول / قَوْلِ } \\
& \text { قَدَر / يَقْبِر / قُدْرْةَ / مَقْلِرَهة }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { نَظَرَ / يَنْرُ / نَظْرَ / } \\
& \text { هَمْ / يَهُمْ / هَمْ } \\
& \text { وَجَد / يوجَد / وُجود } \\
& \text { وُصل / يوصَل / وُصول اوح } \\
& \text { وَقَع / يَقَع / وُقوع ا و }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Form II



## Form III

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { حاوَل | مُحاوِل | مُحاوَّلة } \\
& \text { سافَر / يُسافِر / سَفِرْ } \\
& \text { قارَن / يُقَارِن / مُمُقارنَّة } \\
& \text { جاوَب / يُجاوِب / جَوْاب } \\
& \text { ساعَد / يُساعِد / مُسْاعَدَة }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { لاقى / يُلاقي / مُلاقاة }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Form IV

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أَراد / يُريد / إرادَة أَعاد / يُعيد / إعادَة }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Form V } \\
& \text { تَحْسَنْ / يَتحَسَنْ / تَحَسُنْ }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Form VI

تَناوِل / يَتْاوَل / تَناوُل

## Form VII

إْنَقَسَم / يُنْقَسم / /iْنِقْسام

## Form VIII

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { إِرْتاح / يْرْتاح / إرْتِياح } \\
& \text { اِسْتَكم / يَسْتِلِم / اسْتْلام }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Form X

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { إِسْرَاح / يَسْتُرَ يح / إسْتِر احَهَ } \\
& \text { إسْتْمْكَل / يَسْتَمْمِل / /إسْتْعْمْال }
\end{aligned}
$$

# FORMAL SPOKEN ARABIC BASIC COURSE WITH MP3 FILES SECOND EDITION 

Karin C. Ryding and David J. Mehall

"Goes a long way toward bridging the gap between Ar spectrum and Modern Standard Arabic (MSA) at the other end, and with the addition of a number of key Levantine Colloquial vocabulary items, it allows learners who have a certain expertise in MSA to make use of that expertise appropriately and effectively as they pursue their daily lives in the Middle East."
-Gerald E. Lampe, deputy director of the National Foreign Language Center and president of the American Association of Teachers of Arabic
"This revised edition is sound in approach and cultural content; it enables academicians and professionals alike to acquire a spoken vernacular that transcends the boundaries of diverse Arabic dialects while carefully overcoming localisms-thanks to the authors' classroom-tested and adaptable materials and masterful approach that seamlessly weaves commonalities among spoken dialects into one learnable language variety."
-Mohssen Esseesy, assistant professor and coordinator, Arabic Program, George
Washington University

With a nongrammar-based approach, Formal Spoken Arabic Basic Course with MP3 Files fosters communicative competence in Arabic on all levels and develops speaking proficiency without abandoning Arabic script. It has proven to be clear, effective, and relevant to the needs of Americans living and working in the Arab East. Updated and with additional exercises, task-based lessons feature basic dialogues between Americans and Arabs, explanations of new structures, and vocabulary expansion; and provide gradual access to the sounds and script of Arabic by emphasizing listening and reading comprehension first, then slowly adding oral exercises and activities until the student has achieved basic proficiency.

Not intended for self-instruction for beginners, it does assume some previous knowledge of Modern Standard Arabic, Arabic script and phonology, and previous or simultaneous instruction in orthography. This new edition includes a CD of MP3 audio exercises that are keyed to the text and drill students on listening and speaking.

GEORGETOWN CLASSICS IN ARABIC LANGUAGE AND LINGUISTICS
Karin C. Ryding and Margaret Nydell, series editors


[^0]:    * s is used as object of preposition; $\mathbf{i}$ is used as object of verb.

